

**Н. Н. Ермашкевич
Д. С. Гейсик**

**СПРАВОЧНИК
ПО ГРАММАТИКЕ
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА
ДЛЯ АБИТУРИЕНТОВ**



**МИНСК
БГУ
2011**

УДК 811.111'36(075.4)
ББК 81.2Англ-2-922
Е72

Рекомендовано
советом факультета
доуниверситетского образования
21 апреля 2010 г., протокол № 9

Рецензенты:
доцент кафедры английского языка гуманитарных
факультетов БГУ кандидат филологических наук
А. И. Долгорукова;
старший преподаватель кафедры делового
английского языка БГЭУ *И. В. Кузьмина*

Ермашкевич, Н. Н.

Е72 Справочник по грамматике английского языка для абитуриентов
[Электронный ресурс] / Н. Н. Ермашкевич, Д. С. Гейсик. – Минск :
БГУ, 2011. – Режим доступа : <http://www.elib.bsu.by>, ограниченный.
ISBN 978-985-518-471-4.

Пособие представляет собой достаточно полное и систематическое описание основных грамматических тем программы средней школы и может быть использовано абитуриентами и старшеклассниками для подготовки к централизованному тестированию. Материалы пособия апробированы в ходе учебного процесса на факультете доуниверситетского образования БГУ.

УДК 811.111'36(075.4)
ББК 81.2Англ-2-922

CONTENTS

Предисловие	5
The Verb	6
Formation	6
Classification	8
The Active Voice	10
The Sequence of Tenses	26
Direct and Indirect Speech	28
The Passive Voice	30
Modal Verbs	33
The Subjunctive Mood. Conditional sentences	
The Noun	50
Formation	50
The Number of Nouns	52
The Gender of Nouns	56
The Case of Nouns	58
Subject-Predicate Agreement	59
“It” or “there”	63
The Article	64
The Definite Article (the)	64
The Indefinite Article (a, an)	66
The Zero Article	66
The Pronoun	77
Classification of Pronouns	77
The Adjective	83
Formation	83
Classification of Adjectives	85
Characteristics of Adjectives	85

The Adverb	89
Formation	89
Degrees of Comparison	90
Adjectives and Adverbs with Different Meaning	91
The Verbals	92
The Gerund	92
The Infinitive	93
The Participle	99
Conjunctions	101
The Numeral	105
Appendix	
Appendix 1. “Prepositions”	108
Appendix 2. “Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns with Prepositions”	120
Appendix 3. “The Main Forms of Irregular Verbs”	146
Appendix 4. “Expressions with “DO”	156
Appendix 5. “Expressions with “MAKE”	160
Appendix 6. “Synonymous and Similar Verbs”	166

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Настоящее пособие представляет собой достаточно полное и систематическое описание основных грамматических тем программы средней школы по английскому языку и соответствует уровню “upper-intermediate”.

Цель пособия «Справочник по грамматике английского языка для абитуриентов» – систематизация знаний по грамматике английского языка у старшеклассников и абитуриентов и подготовка их к централизованному тестированию.

В пособии рассматривается функционирование основных частей речи: глагола, существительного, артикля, местоимения, прилагательного, наречия, герундия, инфинитива, причастия, числительного, союзов и предлогов. В приложении дается подробное описание употребления предлогов с глаголами, существительными и прилагательными, приводится широкий перечень употребления глаголов “do” и “make”, а также таблица основных форм неправильных глаголов. Теоретический материал дает полное представление о той или иной грамматической теме, помогает видеть ее во всем многообразии и верно употребить в речевой ситуации или в заданиях теста. При составлении пособия использовались аутентичные материалы, а также учебники И. П. Крыловой, Т. Ю. Дроздовой, Е. В. Макаровой, Е. Б. Карневской, дополняющие теорию практическими упражнениями, сборники тестов РИКЗ 2005–2010 гг., материалы репетиционного тестирования.

Материалы пособия были апробированы в течение нескольких лет на факультете доуниверситетского образования БГУ для подготовки абитуриентов по профилям “иностранные языки”, “международные отношения”, “экономический профиль” и подтвердили свою эффективность.

Пособие может быть использовано учащимися старших классов общеобразовательных школ, абитуриентами, готовящимися к централизованному тестированию, а также самыми разными категориями лиц, желающих усовершенствовать грамматические навыки английского языка.

THE VERB

Formation

-ate	origin – originate, difference – differentiate; dedicative – dedicate, tolerant – tolerate.
Be-	1. Состояние, достижение определенного состояния: belittle – недооценивать, belie – искажать, beloved – обожаемый, becalm – успокаивать. 2. Для образования переходных глаголов: befriend – относиться дружески, beseech – молить, просить, besiege – окружать. 3. Иное значение: believe, belong, become, befall (происходить).
Circum-	(вокруг, в окружности) – circumnavigate – плавать вокруг, circumscribe – описывать окружность, обводить.
Co-	(совместно): co-operate, coexist, co-star, co-direct.
Col-	(вместе): collaborate, collect; colleague.
Com-	(вместе): combine, compound.
Con-	(вместе): connect, converge (объединяться).
Contra-	(противопоставление, противоположное воздействие на другое явление): contradict, contravene – нарушать, действовать против.
Counter-	(препятствовать): counterattack, counteract.
De-	1. Действия, обратные тем, которые выражены исходным глаголом: decentralize, decolonize, destabilize. 2. Удаление: dehouse, defrost, de-gut (потрошить). 3. Иное значение: depart, depress, design, devote.
Dis-	(действия, обратные тем, которые выражены исходными глаголами): disappoint, discharge, discolour, dislocate, dissolve.
En-, em-	1. Достижение определенного состояния, создание определенных условий. Em- сочетается с глаголами, начинающимися с b, m, p : embody (воплощать), empower (позволять); enrich, enfranchise (предоставлять права), encode, entomb, entrap, enable. 2. Иное значение: enjoy, enlist, enlighten; embalm (бальзамировать), embark (садиться на корабль).
-en	1. Adjective – Verb: broad – broaden, dark – darken, deaf – deafen, deep – deepen, dead – deaden, fat – fatten, hard – harden, long – lengthen, loose – loosen, quick – quicken, sharp – sharpen, short – shorten, strong – strengthen, tight – tighten, weak – weaken, wide – widen. 2. Noun – Verb: breadth – broaden, darkness – darken, depth – deepen, fright – frighten, haste – hasten, heart – hearten, length – lengthen, strength – strengthen, width – widen.
Fore-	(перед): foresee, forecast, foretell.
Half-	(наполовину): half-promise, half-realize.
Il-	illuminate.
Ill-	ill-treat (навредить).

Inter-	(взаимодействовать): interweave (interlace, interknit) – сплестать, interlink, interact.
-ify	(достижение определенного состояния или качества): 1. Adjective – Verb: intense – intensify, false – falsify, simple – simplify, pure – purify. 2. Noun – Verb: horror – horrify, beauty – beautify, glory – glorify, note – notify, identity – identify, terror – terrify.
-ise	advertise, advise, apologise, despise, disguise, surprise, televise.
-ize	1. Adjective – Verb: modern – modernize, sterile – sterilize. 2. Noun – Verb: memory – memorize, sympathy – sympathize, emphasis – emphasize, hospital – hospitalize, jeopardy – jeopardize (рисковать), synchrony – synchronize. 3. Др. значения: agonize, fertilize, scrutinize, specialize.
Mis-	(неправильно): misbehave, misspell, misread, misinterpret, misinform.
Off-	off-load (выгружать).
Out-	(выполнять действия лучше остальных): outdo (превзойти), outplay (обыграть), outsmart (перехитрить).
Over-	(пере-): overestimate, overflow, overdo, overcome, overrun, overturn, overcrowd, overcook.
Pre-	1. (пред-): pre-date (датировать задним числом), predetermine, prejudge (предрешать). 2. Указывает на уже завершённое действие: preset – заранее устанавливать.
Re-	1. Пере- : rebuild, recreate, rewrite, reunite, regenerate. 2. Иное значение: react, recover, review.
Sub-	1. (под): subscribe, substitute, submerge. 2. Иное значение: subvert (низвергать), subsidize.
Super-	superimpose (накладывать), supervise, supersede (смещать), superintend (заведовать).
Sur-	surpass (превышать), surmount, surmount (преодолевать).
Tele-	(удаленность предмета либо действия, происходящие на расстоянии): telephone, televise.
Trans-	1. Способ перемещения: transmit, transplant, transport. 2. Пере-: transform, translate, transmute (превращать). 3. Иное значение: transcend – превышать, transfix – пронзать, transpire – обнаруживаться.
Un-	1. Смена действия на противоположное: undo, undress, unlock, unplug. 2. Иное значение: unnerve – нервировать.
Under-	1. Недо- : underestimate, under-use (недогрузить), undervalue. 2. Под- :underline, underscore. 3. Иное значение: underwrite, understand, undermine, undergo (испытывать).
Up-	1. Усовершенствование: update, upgrade, uprate. 2. Указание на причинение беспокойства: upset, uproar. 3. Иное значение: uphold – поддерживать, upbraid – бранить, укорять.
-y	application – to apply.

Conversion

Air – to air, `export – to ex`port, `import – to im`port, water – to water.

Classification

1. **Terminative verbs** (предельные глаголы) imply a limit beyond which the action cannot continue (i.e. they have a final aim in view): *to open, to close, to bring*.
2. **Durative verbs** (непредельные глаголы) do not imply any such limit, and the action can go on indefinitely: *to carry, to know, to live, to play, to sit, to speak*.
But: as most verbs in English are polysemantic they may be terminative in one meaning and durative in another:
e.g. I saw him at once (увидел – terminative).
I saw his face quite clearly (видел – durative).
3. **Dynamic verbs** (actional verbs) admit of the continuous form:
to eat, to make, to fall (She is making a cake).
4. **Stative verbs** refer to states rather than actions:
 - a) **verbs of the mind and thinking:** agree, believe, consider, doubt, expect, forget, know, mean, mind, remember, suppose, think, understand.
e.g. What do you think of that book?
 - b) **verbs of emotion and feeling:** adore, care for, hate, like, dislike, love, prefer, want, wish.
e.g. I hate doing nothing.
 - c) **verbs of the senses:** feel, hear, notice, see, smell, sound, taste.
e.g. The cake smells good!
 - d) **verbs of possession:** have, possess, belong to, own.
e.g. He owns the house.
 - e) **verbs of composition** (consist of, contain, include, have) and **connection** (come from, concern, cost, fit, suit, match).
 - f) **certain other verbs:** allow, appear (seem), astonish, claim, depend on, envy, exist, forgive, need, object, owe, please, prevent, puzzle, refuse, remind, resemble, surprise, tend.
e.g. It depends on the circumstances.
5. **Transitive verbs** require some kind of object to complete their meaning.
e.g. I swear I'm telling the truth (direct object).
His mother never gave him advice (indirect object).
Now let's talk of something sensible (prepositional object).
6. **Intransitive verbs** do not require any object. Polysemantic verbs may be transitive in one meaning and intransitive in another.
e.g. He ran uphill past a block of houses.
e.g. I didn't know where to find him as he had changed his address.
I was glad to see that he had not changed at all.
7. **Notional verbs** always have a lexical meaning of their own and can have an independent syntactic function in the sentence.
e.g. We'd rather you stayed a little longer.
8. **Structural verbs** do not have an independent syntactic function.
 - a) **a modal verb** is always accompanied by an infinitive – together they form a modal predicate.
e.g. I can't stand TV commercials.
 - b) **a link verb** is followed by a predicative; together they form a nominal predicate.
e.g. He was a middle-aged man.
 - c) **an auxiliary verb** is entirely devoid of lexical meaning. Combined with a notional verb it serves to build up analytical forms.
e.g. Do you know why he said that?

The Active Voice

Aspect Tense	Indefinite (to do)	Continuous (to be)	Perfect (to have)	Perfect Continuous (have been)
Present	He writes letters every day	He is writing a letter now	He has already written a letter	He has been writing a letter since morning
Past	He wrote a letter yesterday	He was writing a letter at 5 o'clock yesterday	He had written a letter by 5 o'clock	He had been writing a letter for two hours before we came
Future	He will write a letter tomorrow	He will be writing a letter at five o'clock tomorrow	He will have written a letter by five o'clock tomorrow	He will have been writing a letter for two hours when I come
Future in-the-Past	(He said that) he would write a letter the next day	(He said that) he would be writing a letter at 5 o'clock the next day	(He said that) he would have written a letter by 5 o'clock the next day	(He said that) he would have been writing a letter for two hours when I came

The Passive Voice (to be + V₃)

Aspect Tense	Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	Perfect Continuous
Present	Letters are written every day	The letter is being written now	The letter has already been written	_____
Past	The letter was written yesterday	The letter was being written at 5 o'clock yesterday	The letter had been written by 5 o'clock	_____
Future	The letter will be written tomorrow	_____	The letter will have been written by 5 o'clock tomorrow	_____
Future in-the-Past	(He said that) the letter would be written the next day	_____	(He said that) the letter would have been written by 5 o'clock the next day	_____

The Active Voice

Present Tenses

The Present Indefinite (Simple) Tense

The Markers

usually, generally, often, always, sometimes, seldom, occasionally, never, ever, every year (day, week, month), once (twice, three times) a year, daily, on Sundays, etc.

The Present Indefinite is used to:

V _{1(e)s}	? Do(es)
	– do(es)n't

1. Talk about repeated (recurrent) actions or habits (habitual actions) in the present.
e.g. On Sundays we usually stay at home. I use my mobile phone every day.
2. Talk about permanent characteristics, situations or states.
e.g. She wears expensive clothes. She works for an insurance company.
3. Talk about universal truths (general rules, laws of nature).
e.g. The Earth goes around the Sun. Water boils at 100° C. Matter consists of small particles.
4. Give instructions:
e.g. First you weigh the ingredients.
5. Tell a joke or a story, to summarize the plot of the film or book.
e.g. The Englishman goes to the Irishman and says... Our hero goes off to search for the treasure, which he eventually finds after many adventures.
6. Describe a succession of actions in the past, usually to make a vivid narration of past events (in literary style). This application of the Present Indefinite is called the historic or dramatic present.
e.g. She arrives full of life and spirit. And about a quarter of an hour later she sits down in a chair; says she doesn't feel well, gasps a bit and dies.
7. Denote actions and states continuing at the moment of speaking (with stative verbs).
e.g. I want you to be happy.
8. Express a succession of point actions taking place at the time of speaking:
 - a) in stage directions:
As he passes Vivie he shakes hands with her also and bids her good-night.
 - b) in comments:
Chi-Chi walks over to the travelling box. She climbs on the rock. The crowd moves closer to Chi-Chi.
 - c) in demonstrations:
Now I peel the apples, slice them and put into the dish.
9. Express declarations, announcements, etc. referring to the moment of speaking. The action is not viewed in its progress.
e.g. I declare the meeting open. I swear it to you!

10. Denote completed actions with the meaning of the Present Perfect (with the verbs *to forget, to hear, to be told*).
*e.g. I forget your telephone number. I hear you are leaving for London.
 I am told she returned from France last week. Now I understand.*
11. The Present Simple is also often used in exclamatory and interrogative sentences.
e.g. How swiftly the years fly! Why do you talk like that to me?
12. To denote actions going on at the present moment when the fact is important and not the process.
e.g. Why don't you answer? Why don't you listen to me?
13. Some durative verbs, for example, verbs of bodily sensation (*ache, feel, hurt, itch, etc.*), *wear, look (to seem), shine, gleam* can be used either in the Present Indefinite or in the Present Continuous with little difference in meaning.
*e.g. 'I know what you are feeling, Roy', she said. 'We all feel exactly the same'.
 You are looking well. = You do look well. My feet ache. = My feet are aching.
 My leg hurts. = My leg is hurting.*

14. Express future actions:

- a) Talk about fixed future events and actions which are certain to take place according to a **timetable, programme, calendar, schedule, command or arrangement** worked out for person or persons officially (flights, arrivals, departures, itineraries). In this case the sentence usually contains an indication of time.
*e.g. The plane takes off at 10. Can you tell me what time the game starts today, please?
 Our tourist group sleep at the Globo hotel this night and start for Berlin tomorrow morning. (According to the itinerary).*
- b) It is used in **subordinate clauses of time, condition and concession** instead of the Future Indefinite Tense. These clauses may be introduced by the conjunctions:
 – **of time:** *while, when, till/until, before, after, once, as soon as, unless;*
 – **of condition:** *if, on condition (that), provided (that), providing (that), in case, as long as;*
 – **of concession:** *even if, even though, no matter how, whenever, whatever, however, etc.*
- In such cases we usually find the Future Indefinite, or modal verbs, or the Imperative Mood in the principal clause.
*e.g. Will you wait while I look through the manuscript?
 But I must have the doctor handy, in case she feels worse.*
- (However in object clauses introduced by the conjunctions when and if it is the Future Indefinite that is used to denote future actions. (*I don't know (what?) when she will come*). It occurs in reported speech and the object clause doesn't contain a condition).
- c) In object clauses after **to see (to), to take care, to make sure, to be sure:**
*e.g. He will make sure, that no harm **comes** to her.*
- d) The use of the Present Simple with reference to **the immediate future** is structurally dependent in some special questions.
*e.g. What do we do next? = Что будем сейчас делать?
 What happens next? = Что сейчас будет?*
- e) Make suggestions:
e.g. Why don't you join us?

Question Tags

1	I am older than you,	aren't I?
2	He used to work here,	didn't he?
3	Please help me,	will you/won't you/can you/could you?
4	Let's go to the cinema,	shall we?
5	Let him (me, her) buy it,	will you/won't you?
6	Don't do that again,	will you/won't you?
7	She has your book (= to possess),	hasn't she?
8	She had an operation yesterday, She had to work hard,	didn't she? didn't she?
9	There are some seats left,	aren't there?
10	That pen is Mary's, That is your wife over there,	isn't it? isn't it?
11	This method is rarely used nowadays,	is it?
12	I think she will come,	won't she?

Everyone/everybody/someone/somebody/anyone/no one/nobody form their question tags with an auxiliary verb + **they**:

Nobody phoned me, did they? Somebody should help her, shouldn't they?

Everybody lowered their eyes, didn't they?

The Present Continuous Tense

to be + Ving

The Markers

now, right now, at the moment, at present, still, all day, just (как раз).

- cry – **crying**, study – **studying** (-y doesn't change before **-ing**)
- die – **dying**, lie – **lying**, tie – **tying** (**-ie** changes to **-y**)
- leave – **leaving**, breathe – **breathing** (final **-e** is dropped)
- But:** final **-e** is not dropped from words ending in **-ee, -oe, -ye**:
see – **seeing**, canoe – **canoeing**, dye – **dyeing** (окрашивать)
- cut – **cutting**, prefer – **preferring**, occur – **occurring**
- quarrel – **quarrelling**, travel – **travelling**

1. Denotes an action, which is in progress at the moment of speaking.
e.g. What are you doing at the moment?
2. Denotes an action, which is in progress **around the present**, but not necessarily at the moment of speaking.
e.g. She is looking for a job at the moment. Please don't take that book. Ann is reading it.
3. Denotes an action, that happens more often than is normal (repeated actions with adverbs **always, constantly, continually, forever**), bringing out the person's typical traits. These phrases usually contain an element of **criticism, irritation, indignation, disapproval, annoyance, reproach**. Sentences with such forms are always **emotionally coloured (emphatic)**.
e.g. She is always grumbling. He is constantly complaining.
Sometimes it may reveal a pleasant habit: *Mike is constantly smiling.*

4. Denotes changing or developing situations.
e.g. His English is getting better. The climate is getting warmer. Computers are becoming more and more important in our lives. Your children are growing up very quickly.
5. Some stative verbs may be used in the Present Continuous when they express **an activity**, not a state, or express **great intensity of feeling**.
e.g. I'm seeing my dentist tomorrow. I'm tasting the soup. I'm loving it!

The Present Simple (state)	The Present Continuous (activity)
<i>She <u>is</u> very patient. (Character – permanent state).</i>	<i>You <u>are being</u> very naughty. (You are behaving).</i>
<i>I <u>think</u> it is a wonderful film. (I believe).</i>	<i>He <u>is thinking</u> of emigration. (He is considering).</i>
<i>I <u>see</u> what you mean. (I understand).</i>	<i>You <u>are seeing</u> things. There is no one there. (You are imagining).</i>
<i>I can <u>see</u> your house from here. (I use my eyes).</i>	<i><u>Are you seeing</u> the dentist tomorrow? (Are you meeting?)</i>
<i>This blouse <u>feels</u> like silk. (It has the texture of).</i>	<i>Mum <u>is feeling</u> Tim's forehead. (She is touching).</i>
<i>These flowers <u>smell nice</u>. (They have a nice smell).</i>	<i>She <u>is smelling</u> the roses. (She is sniffing).</i>

6. Some durative verbs (*to wear, to gleam, to look, to shine*) and verbs of bodily sensation (*to ache, to feel, to hurt, to itch*, etc.) can be used either in the Present Indefinite or in the Present Continuous with little difference in meaning.
*e.g. You **are looking** well = You **do look** well. My feet **ache** = My feet **are aching**.
 My leg **hurts** = My leg **is hurting**.*

Future actions:

7. Denotes future arrangements planned by a person.
e.g. We are seeing "Romeo and Juliet" tonight. I am getting married next week and we are having a traditional wedding. I am meeting my manager tomorrow. When are you leaving for London?
8. Denotes future continuous actions in subordinate clauses of time, condition and concession instead of the Future Continuous.
e.g. If I am sleeping when you come, wake me up.

The Present Perfect Tense

have	+ V ₃
has	

The Markers

- | | | |
|---|---|---------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – ever, never, just, already (yet? – in questions; not yet – in negations), still – lately, recently, of late – so far, up to now – complex sentences with superlative constructions, ordinal numerals or 'the only' in the principal clause (it's the first (the second) time, it's the best, this is the only...) – for, since, all day long – How long? Since when? | } | (for stative verbs) |
|---|---|---------------------|

1. **The Present Perfect I (Exclusive)** denotes a completed past action that has a present result.
I have lost my watch. (I haven't got it now).
We still haven't discovered life on other planets. They haven't sent an astronaut to Mars yet.
 The importance of a completed past action for the present stands out clearly in complex sentences with **superlative constructions, ordinal numerals** (to say “*It's the first (the second, the third) time something has happened*”) or “**the only**” in the principal clause.
*This is **the only** place she has been to. It's **the best** salad I have eaten in this restaurant.*
*It's **the first** time he has driven a car (not “is driving”).*
*That's **the third** time he has phoned me this morning.*
2. **The Present Perfect II (Inclusive)** denotes incomplete actions which began in the past, continued up to the present and are still going on. It is usually used instead of the Present Perfect Continuous with stative verbs and when the whole process is negated.
I have known Mike for 5 years. I have been busy since morning.
It hasn't rained since May. I haven't heard from him for the last 2 years.
3. **The Present Perfect III** is used in subordinate clauses of time to denote **a future action** which will be accomplished before the action of the principal clause (which is usually expressed by the Future Indefinite).
She will come (the 2nd action) home as soon as she has finished (the 1st action) her work.
4. It is used with periods of time that haven't finished yet: (today, this week, this year, etc.)
This year we have taken only one assistant. How long have you been here? (the period of time implied is not over).
But: *How long **did** you **stay** in London? (You are not in London now).*
5. It is used to announce “news”, to introduce new information.
The Prime Minister has resigned.
6. It is used in initial part of conversation.
***Have you seen** John? – Yes, I **have**. I saw him five minutes ago.*
7. To express personal experiences (changes) which have happened.
I've lost 10 kilos.
8. The fact of an action is important. **When** the action happened is not important.
I have already completed a postgraduate degree in business and administration.
9. To talk about what has been achieved in a period of time.
How many driving lessons have you had?
10. Emphasis on number.
She has written four letters since this morning. He has called on three clients since 10 o'clock.
11. For situations which are more **permanent**.
Ann lives in Minsk. And she has always lived there. I'm happy. And I have always been happy. The Universe is expanding and it has always been since its beginning.
12. To sum up a situation.
I have read this book twice. He has often been to France.
13. **Live, work** and **feel** can be used either in the Present Perfect or the Present Perfect Continuous with no difference in meaning.
I have worked in the bank for 10 years (the fact is underlined).
I have been working in the bank for 10 years (the process is more important).
14. With the verb “**to be**” in the sense of “**to go**”, “**to visit**”. Hence it takes the preposition **to** after it.
 The meaning of such statements is “**was there at a certain time, but is there no longer**”. It is noteworthy that **to be** acquires this meaning only if used in the Present Perfect or the Past Perfect.

She says she has been to Paris 3 times. I have been to London. (I still remember).

But: It's the fifth time I have been in London.

I have been in China for a year already to work with 20-year-old students learning English.

15. Don't use the Present Perfect if there is no connection with the present. The Past Indefinite is used to describe historic events.

The Chinese invented printing (not "have invented"). How many plays did Shakespeare write?

But: My sister is a writer. She has written many books.

16. Tenses in since-clauses.

- a) when **since** introduces a subordinate clause which indicates the beginning of a period of time continuing until now, the Past Indefinite is used in it. In the principal clause we use the Present Perfect:

I have read a lot of books **since** I came here.

Ever **since** we met, you have never asked me what I prefer to do.

How long is it (has it been) **since** you went swimming?

It is (has been) ages **since** I went for a swim.

- b) if the actions expressed in both clauses are durative and still continuing, the Present Perfect tense is used in both clauses:

I have known her **since** I have lived in this street.

Since we have been friends we have never quarrelled.

- c) the Present Perfect Continuous is used in the principal clause to express duration:

Since he came here he has been staying at the same hotel.

- d) if the actions expressed in both clauses are durative and still continuing, the Present Perfect Continuous may be used in both clauses (two parallel actions):

The children have been staying at their aunt's **since** their mother has been living abroad.

The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

have been	+ V ^{ing}
has been	

The Markers

- | |
|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">– for (a long time, a month, an hour)– since (five o'clock, yesterday), ever since– How long? Since when?– nearly (a week, a year), quite a while, all life, all day long, etc.– lately, recently |
|--|

- 1. The Present Perfect Continuous I (Inclusive)** denotes an action, which began in the Past, has been going on up to the present and is still going on. It is usually used with **since, for, How long? Since when?** It is rendered in Russian by the present.

e.g. He said he was in town and wanted to see me. That was couple of hours ago and I have been waiting ever since. It has been raining steadily for 3 days on end now.

Note. The verbs not used in the Continuous form cannot be used in the Perfect Continuous form either. In this case we use the Perfect form.

e.g. I have known him since last year.

2. The Present Perfect Continuous II (Exclusive) denotes an action, which was recently in progress but is no longer going on at the present moment. It affects the present situation, explains or gives reasons for the state of things at the present moment. It is rendered in Russian by the Past and is not associated with any indications of time.

e.g. There are puddles everywhere. It has been raining hard.

Note. In negative sentences, when the action itself is completely negated, the Present Perfect II is preferred to the Present Perfect Continuous.

e.g. He hasn't played cards for 2 years.

But when the negation doesn't refer to the action itself but to the circumstances attending it the Present Perfect Continuous is used.

e.g. The children haven't been sleeping at all well recently.

3. The Present Perfect Continuous may be used with stative verbs to intensify feelings and actions.

e.g. I have always been wanting to visit London!

4. To express anger, indignation, annoyance.

e.g. Who has been using my cup?

Past Tenses

The Past Indefinite (Simple) Tense

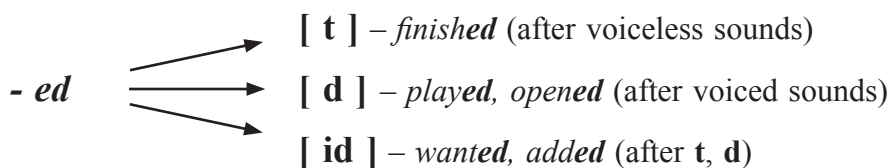
V₂

The Markers

- **Just now, the other day, ago, since, then...**
- **When? Where? What time? How?**
- **Periods of time now over (yesterday, last week (month), in 1945, etc.)**

He came yesterday. When did he come? He didn't come in time.

He was there alone. Was he there alone? He wasn't alone there.



– **y** changes to **i** before the ending **-ed**:

study – *studied*, apply – *applied*

(but: *stay – stayed, play – played, enjoy – enjoyed*).

– doubling consonants:

a) after a short stressed vowel:

stop – stopped, plan – planned.

b) if the verb has more than one syllable, the final consonant is doubled only if the final syllable is stressed:

pre`fer – pre`ferred, re`gret – re`gretted, per`mit – per`mitted.

c) the final consonant is not doubled if the verb ends in two consonants, or there are two vowel letters before it:

start – started, help – helped, boil – boiled, need – needed.

d) -l is usually doubled:

travel – travelled, cancel – cancelled (but: crawled, dialed, boiled, spoiled).

e) -p is doubled in some words:

kidnap – kidnapped, handicap – handicapped, worship – worshipped.

The Past Indefinite (Simple) Tense is used to express:

1. A single past action or a past state. The time of the action is often indicated.
*e.g. Things **came** to a crisis in July.*
2. An action which occupied a whole period of time now over. In such cases emphasis is placed on the reference of the fact to the past, not on the duration of the activity. The period of the time is usually indicated in the sentence by means of adverbial phrases with the prepositions **for** or **during** and synonymous expressions.
*e.g. My mother **worked** for this bank **for 20 years**. But now she **is** a pensioner.
When I **was** a boy I **had** an English nanny. And I **went** to school in England **for two years**, besides.
When I **was** in the Paris Metro last year, I **listened** to a group of African drummers **for hours**.*
3. A succession of past actions in narration.
*e.g. I **found** some matches, **climbed** on the table, **lit** the gas lamp, then **settled down** to read.*
4. Recurrent actions (generally supported by the use of adverbial modifiers of frequency such as **often**, **never**, **now and again**, **sometimes**, **for days**, etc.):
*e.g. But **sometimes** he **found** his work difficult.*
5. Permanent actions, states and habits.
*e.g. I **knew** they **loved** each other, but they always **quarrelled**. He **lived** in Rome for 10 years (but not now).*
6. Continuous actions with stative verbs that cannot be used in continuous forms:
*e.g. He **wanted** all her troubles for himself at that moment.*
Note: When we speak of **inanimate things** the Past Indefinite is the norm with **durative verbs**:
*e.g. Her **make up** things **lay** in front of her. She **had been** doing her face.*
But sometimes native speakers use the Past Continuous with **durative verbs** to make the narration more vivid and to give a background to the events:
*e.g. The fence **was** cut into pieces, and the pieces **were standing** around the walls of the big room. The fire **was crackling** merrily in the fireplace, and outside the wind **was howling**.*
7. To report statements and questions:
*e.g. He **said** that he **was** a stranger. She **asked** if I **knew** her brother.*
8. Some durative verbs, for example, verbs of bodily sensation (**to feel**, **to hurt**, **to ache**, **to itch**, etc.) and such verbs as **to wear**, **to look** (= **to seem**), **to shine** and others may be used either in the Past Indefinite or in the Past Continuous with little difference in meaning:
*e.g. His wife **was looking** happy. She **looked** like a very wise mermaid rising out of the sea.*
9. **Future actions** viewed from the past in reported speech (5 cases).
See “The Present Indefinite” (p. 11).
*e.g. Probably she **knew** that, whatever **happened**, he would not give her away.*

used to do smth

- expresses past habits which are now finished:
*e.g. Kate **used to go** swimming a lot, but she never goes swimming now. I used to meet him sometimes when he was working on **the Chronicle** here.*
 - expresses past states and situations which are no longer true:
*e.g. Robert **used to be** very slim when he was younger. I **used to live** in London, but I moved in 2009.*
 - the negative of **used to** is normally **didn't use to**:
*e.g. I **didn't use to live** in London.*
 - it is possible to say:
*e.g. I **used not to have** dinner.
You never **used to like** classical music.*
 - questions are normally formed in the following way:
*e.g. Where **did you use to live**? **Did you use to like** classical music?*
But: *Used you to climb the old apple-tree in the garden?*
- Note. 1.** Don't confuse with the passive form of the verb **to use (to be used to do sth)** =
употреблять, пользоваться, применять(ся):
*The thermometer **is used** to measure temperature. He never **uses** a dictionary.*
- 2.** Don't confuse the expression **used to do sth** with the following gerundial constructions:

Привыкнуть к чему-либо

(Gerundial constructions):

To be used to **doing** sth.

To be accustomed to **doing** sth.

To get used to **doing** sth.

To get accustomed to **doing** sth.

*e.g. I was used to driving on the left. I got used to driving fast.
I got accustomed to getting up early. She was used to the weather there.*

would do sth

(is used only with dynamic verbs)

1. It expresses past habits that are now finished (only recurrent actions) and is typical of literary style.
*e.g. When we were children we **would play (used to play)** cowboys and Indians together.*
2. To talk about past states we can use **used to**, but not **would**:
*e.g. My grandfather **used to be** a policeman. (not: My grandfather **would be** a policeman).*

The Past Continuous Tense

was	+ V ^{ing}
were	

The Markers

at 6 p.m., from 5 to 7, all day long, the whole day, all that year, all the morning, at that moment, as, just as, while, when, still.
--

1. To talk about something which was in progress at a definite moment in the past.
e.g. *I was translating the article from 5 to 7 o'clock yesterday.*
2. To express an action going on at a given period of time in the past. In this case the precise limits of the action are not known.
e.g. *"What were you doing in Paris?" "I was trying to find a publisher for my new book."
He remembered that Helen had met her husband when she was working in a New York publishing house.*
3. To talk about actions in progress when something else happened.
e.g. *As (just as, when, while) I was leaving, the telephone **rang**.*
4. To talk about actions in progress at the same time.
e.g. *While I was reading, Joan was playing the piano.*
Note. When the actions of the two clauses are fully simultaneous, the Past Simple is commonly found in both clauses with durative verbs (with conjunctions **as** and **while**).
*They **talked** little as (while) they **drove** home.*
*We **looked** at the stamps while (as) we **waited** for Hudson to turn up.*
5. To give a background to an event.
e.g. *I looked out of the window. It was raining. The wind was blowing.*
6. To express actions characterizing the person denoted by the subject (to bring out the person's typical traits). The speaker expresses **irritation, indignation, annoyance**. The adverbial modifiers **always, constantly, continually, forever** are found in the sentence.
e.g. *She was constantly grumbling. When I worked here I was always making mistakes.*
7. In polite inquiries.
e.g. *I was wondering if you could give me a lift. Were you looking for anything special?*
8. With stative verbs if the verb changes its meaning, or the action is lent great intensity.
e.g. *I was seeing George regularly now.*
9. Either the Past Continuous or the Past Simple may be used with the verbs *to feel, to hurt, to ache, to itch, to wear, to look, to shine, to gleam, to sit, to stand, to lie, to hang, to talk, to speak, to carry, to walk*.
e.g. *You do look well! Are you feeling well?*
Note. When we speak of inanimate things the Past Simple is the norm with the verbs mentioned above.
e.g. *On the table **lay** three rows of cards face upwards.*
But: *I was surprised: the fence was cut into pieces, and the pieces **were standing** around the walls of the big room.*
10. To talk about **future arrangements** in the past.
e.g. *Everybody was excited because they were leaving for Paris.*

The Past Perfect Tense

had + V₃

denotes actions the beginning of which (always) and the end (usually) precede a certain moment of time in the past (i.e. pre-past actions)

The Markers

1. By (by that time, by September), etc.
2. Hardly...when, scarcely...when, nearly...when, barely...when, no sooner...than (with an inverted word order) = *He успел..., как.... Едва..., как....*
3. When, after, before, as soon as, till/until.

1. **The Past Perfect I (Exclusive)** denotes a prior action completed before a certain moment in the past.
e.g. *When we **got** to the river the boat race had already started. She **loved** me for the dangers I had passed. They **didn't leave** the restaurant until the bill had been paid.*
2. **The Past Perfect II (Inclusive)** denotes an action in progress which began before a given past moment and continued up to it or into it.
 - a) *With stative verbs:*
*He suddenly **understood** that she had loved him all her life.*
 - b) *With some dynamic verbs of durative meaning where the Past Perfect may be used instead of the Past Perfect Continuous with little difference in meaning:*
*Roy **mentioned** that he had dined at home since his return.*
 - c) *In negative sentences, when the action itself is completely negated the Past Perfect II is preferred to the Past Perfect Continuous:*
*He **mentioned** that he had not played cards for 3 years.*
3. **The Past Perfect III** denotes **a future action** viewed from the past in adverbial clauses of time introduced by ***when, before, after, as soon as, till/until***. It shows that the action of the subordinate clause will be completed before the action of the principal clause, which is usually expressed by the Future-in-the-Past. It is found only in reported speech.
e.g. *She **said** that she would come home as soon as she had finished her work.*

(the 2 nd action)	(the 1 st action)
------------------------------	------------------------------

*He **did** a Master's degree to apply for a managerial post when he had graduated.*
4. In a complex sentence with a subordinate **clause of time** introduced by the correlatives *hardly...when, scarcely...when, nearly...when, barely...when, no sooner...than* with an inverted word order following (inversion). Such sentences are emphatic in meaning.
e.g. ***Hardly** had he entered the station **when** he saw Mary there (inversion).
He had hardly entered the station **when** he saw Mary there (direct word order).*
5. In a complex sentence with a "when-clause" containing the Past Simple in the subordinate clause and the negative form of the Past Perfect in the principal clause.
e.g. *I hadn't gone a hundred yards from the corner **when** I noticed there was a car behind me. = *He прошел я и ста яров, как...**
6. In combinations with the Past Continuous when both actions are viewed from the same past moment. One action is accomplished before that implied moment while the other one is still in progress.
e.g. *Eric, who had been pacing the room, had stopped behind the chair and was leaning on it, when his father told him to come up to his desk. The wind had blown off his hat and it was rolling down the street. When I came they had finished their meal and were drinking coffee.*
7. The action of one of the clauses is not fully accomplished before the action of the other clause occurs. The unaccomplished action is expressed by the Past Perfect. Sometimes there are indications of measure in such sentences. If the unaccomplished action is expressed in the principal clause, its predicate verb is always negative in form.
e.g. *They had not gone four miles before he **understood** that it was going to rain. = *He успели они проехать 4 мили, как...*
If the unaccomplished action is expressed in the subordinate clause, its predicate verb is affirmative in form but negative in meaning.
e.g. *I **discovered** the news before I had been in the house for an hour. = *Я узнал эту новость, не успев провести в доме и часа.***

The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

had been + V _{ing}

The Markers: for, since.

- 1. The Past Perfect Continuous I (Inclusive)** denotes an action which began before a definite moment in the Past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment.
e.g. He knew what she had been thinking about since she received the telegramme.
- 2. The Past Perfect Continuous II (Exclusive)** denotes an action which was no longer going on at a definite moment in the Past, but which had been in progress not long before (i.e. something had been happening for a period of time before something happened).
*e.g. Adeline, who had been helping her mother, now **joined** them.
Their swimming suits **were** wet. They had been swimming.*
- 3.** In negative sentences the Past Perfect Continuous is not common. The Past Perfect is preferred when the negation refers to the action itself but not to its circumstances.
*e.g. I **knew** they had not corresponded for years.*

Means of Expressing Future Actions

I. The Future Indefinite is used:

shall	+ V ₁
will	

- To express a decision or intention often made at the moment of speaking, that is, not planned or premeditated (i.e. **a spontaneous action**).
*e.g. – Wait a minute! Could you give Anne a message from me?
– Sure! I will probably see her at the meeting.
Leave the washing up – I'll do it later.*
- To predict the future or to say what we think will happen.
e.g. He won't pass his examination.
 - In object clauses after verbs (and their equivalents) expressing personal views and opinions:
to be afraid, to believe, to be sure, to doubt, to expect, to have no doubt, to hope, to imagine, to know, to suppose, to suspect, to think, to wonder and the like.
*e.g. I **believe** that inflation will fall to 5 per cent next year.*
 - In object clauses introduced by the conjunctions when and if to denote future actions. It occurs in reported speech and the object clause doesn't contain any condition.
e.g. I don't know (what?) when (if) she will come.
 - With adverbs **of course, probably, perhaps, certainly** to denote actions whose realization is uncertain, doubtful or merely supposed.
*e.g. **Perhaps**, I will see you tomorrow. **Of course**, he will send you a letter in a few days.*
- With **stative verbs** the Future Indefinite is used to express any actions referring to the future, without any restrictions.
e.g. She will know the truth soon. We shall have some news for you.

4. In passive constructions.
e.g. She will be paid in cash.
5. In the principal clause of a complex sentence with a clause of time, condition and concession.
e.g. *We will talk about it **whenever** he comes.*
6. To make statements of a fact about the future.
e.g. *I'll be forty next month.*
7. In formal (official) English it is used to speak about definite future plans, to make announcements.
e.g. *Prime Minister: "The government will lower taxes, and I ensure that every family in this country will benefit."*
The wedding will take place at St. Andrew's on May 21st.
8. To talk about now.
e.g. *Don't phone her now. She will be busy.*
9. To express:
 - a single point action in the future;
 - a succession of actions in the future;
 - recurrent future actions;
 - an action occupying a whole period of time in the future;
 - some permanent future actions.
10. When the time of realization of an action is indefinite or when its realization is remote.
e.g. *We shall meet again one day. He will never sell his cottage.*
11. Note the use of **the Future Indefinite** in the following stereotyped sentences:
e.g. *That'll do. No good will come of it. You'll go far. It will do you a lot of good.
Well, we'll see. I'll ask you to excuse me. You'll excuse me, madam.*

II. The Future Indefinite-in-the-Past

<p>should + V₁ would</p>

e.g. *He was sure I should get the job.*

III. The Future Continuous

<p>shall + be + V ing will</p>
--

1. To talk about something which will be in progress at a definite future moment.
e.g. *I will be watching TV at 6 o'clock tomorrow.*
2. To express an action, which the speaker expects to take place in the future in the natural course of events, independently of the will or intention of anyone directly concerned.
e.g. *Come on deck! We shall be entering harbour in a few minutes.*
3. For planned actions (with this meaning will be doing is similar to am doing).
e.g. *I am going to the city centre later (immediate future).
I will be going to the city centre later (not-so-immediate future, a more distant future).
We are meeting tomorrow (we have arranged to meet tomorrow, we have fixed the date of our meeting).*

We will be meeting tomorrow (in the natural course of events; either because we work together, or because we attend classes together, or regularly play some game at the same place or at the same time, etc.).

4. To ask about people's plans, especially when we want something or want someone to do something and we don't want to change the other person's plans.

e.g. – *Will you be using your computer tonight?* – *No, you may use it.*

5. For polite inquiries.

e.g. *Will you be staying long in Minsk?*

IV. The Future Continuous-in-the-Past

should	+ be + V ing
would	

e.g. *He said he would be seeing her that evening at the Kennedys.*

V. The Future Perfect

shall	+ have + V ₃
will	

The Markers

by (by the time, by the end of the week), next year, in a week, before, when.

1. To talk about something that will be completed by a certain time in the future.

e.g. *She will have left for work before the children get home from school. I will have finished the translation by 5 o'clock.*

VI. The Future Perfect-in-the-Past

should	+ have + V ₃
would	

The Markers

by (by the time, by the end of the week), next year, in a week, before, when.

e.g. *I was afraid that he would have started off by the time I got to the coast.*

VII. The Future Perfect Continuous

shall	+ have been + V ing
will	

The Markers

by (by the time, by the end of the week), next year, in a week, in autumn.

1. Describes a continuous action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to it and will be going on at the moment.

e.g. *I'll have been sleeping for two hours by the time he gets home.*

In September they'll have been building their cottage for 3 years.

VIII. The Future Perfect-Continuous-in-the-Past

should
+ have been + V ing
would

The Markers

by (by the time, by the end of the week), next year, in a week, in autumn.

e.g. *He said that in May he would have been studying at the Faculty of pre-university education for 8 months.*

IX. The Present Simple

1. Talk about fixed future events and actions which are certain to take place according to a **timetable, programme, calendar, schedule, command or arrangement** worked out for a person or persons officially (**flights, arrivals, departures, itineraries**). In this case the sentence usually contains an indication of time.

e.g. *The plane takes off at 10. Can you tell me what time the game starts today, please?*

Our tourist group sleep at the Globo hotel this night and start for Berlin tomorrow morning. (According to the itinerary).

2. It is used in **subordinate clauses of time, condition and concession** instead of the Future Indefinite Tense. These clauses may be introduced by the conjunctions:

- **of time:** *while, when, till/until, before, after, once, as soon as, unless;*
- **of condition:** *if, on condition (that), provided (that), providing (that), in case, as long as;*
- **of concession:** *even if, even though, no matter how, whenever, whatever, however, etc.*

In such cases we usually find the Future Indefinite, or modal verbs, or the Imperative Mood in the principal clause.

e.g. *Will you wait while I look through the manuscript?*

But I must have the doctor handy, in case she feels worse.

(However in object clauses introduced by the conjunctions when and if it is the Future Indefinite that is used to denote future actions. (*I don't know (what?) when she will come*).

It occurs in reported speech and the object clause doesn't contain a condition).

3. In object clauses after **to see (to), to take care, to make sure, to be sure:**

e.g. *He will make sure, that no harm comes to her.*

4. The use of the Present Simple with reference to the immediate future is structurally dependent in some special questions.

e.g. *What do we do next? = Что будем сейчас делать?*

What happens next? = Что сейчас будет?

5. Make suggestions:

e.g. *Why don't you join us?*

X. The Past Simple denotes future actions viewed from the past.

e.g. Mother **took care** that I held myself well.

XI. The Present Continuous

1. Denotes future arrangements planned by a person.

e.g. We are seeing 'Romeo and Juliet' tonight. I am getting married next week and we are having a traditional wedding. I am meeting my manager tomorrow. When are you leaving for London?

2. Denotes future continuous actions in subordinate clauses of time, condition and concession instead of the Future Continuous.

e.g. If I am sleeping when you come, wake me up.

XII. The Past Continuous denotes future actions viewed from the past.

e.g. She **wrote** that she was coming back in a fortnight.

XIII. The Present Perfect III is used in subordinate clauses of time to denote **a future action** which will be accomplished before the action of the principal clause (which is usually expressed by the Future Indefinite).

e.g. She will come (the 2nd action) home as soon as she has finished (the 1st action) her work.

XIV. The Past Perfect III denotes **a future action** viewed from the past in adverbial clauses of time introduced by when, before, after, as soon as, till/until. It shows that the action of the subordinate clause will be completed before the action of the principal clause, which is usually expressed by the Future-in-the-Past. It is found only in reported speech.

e.g. She **said** that she would come home **as soon as** she had finished her work.

(the 2nd action)

(the 1st action)

He **did** a Master's degree to apply for a managerial post **when** he had graduated.

XV. To be going to do something

1. It is an idiomatic expression, which is used to express a future plan, decision or intention made before the moment of speaking (premeditated intention).

e.g. – Why are you putting on those old clothes? – I'm going to paint the kitchen.

2. We can use **to be going to do sth** to make predictions based on what we can see (i.e. we know that something will happen because of information in the present).

e.g. Look at that beautiful sunshine! It is going to be a nice day.

Be careful! You are going to break that glass.

It's 8 o'clock – you are going to be late again. It is going to snow later tonight.

XVI. Modal verb “to be to”

– **duties**: I **am to go** back at once.

– **obligation, resulting from an arrangement or plan**: Who **is to be** the first?

– **orders and instructions, which are to be carried out in the future**:

Tom, you **are not to talk** like that in front of the child.

– **strict prohibitions (only in the negative form)**: You **are not to smoke** in this room.

– **impossibility**: They **aren't to be** trusted.

– **something that is destined to happen or is unavoidable**:

If we **are to be** neighbours for life we should be on friendly terms (если нам предстоит...)

He didn't know that he **was to become** a famous scientist (...ему суждено было стать...)

If we **are to get** there on time, we must start at once. (Если мы хотим...)

- **set expressions with “to be to”:**
*What **am I to do**? = Что мне делать?*
*What **is to become** of me? = Что со мной будет?*
*Where **am I to go**? = Куда мне деваться?*

XVII. Modal verb “will”

- **willingness, intention, wish:**
*I'll do what I can. We shall be delighted if you **will lunch** with us (modal meaning).*
- **offer:** – *I need some money. – Don't worry. **I'll lend** you some.*
- **promise:** *Thank you for lending me the money. **I'll pay** you back on Friday.*
- **supposition:** *The telephone rang. “That **will be** your mother,” Jenny said to her husband.
(Это, по-видимому, твоя мать.)*
- **request:** ***Will** you ask her to ring me back?*
- **determination to perform an action:** ***I'll come** with you, Barbara.*
- **refusal to perform an action:** *I **won't argue** with you. My car **won't start**.*
- **invitation:** ***Won't** you sit down? **Won't** you **partake** of it?
(Не хотите ли отведать это?)*
- **command (with the 2nd and the 3rd person):** *You **will come** here tomorrow.*

XVIII. Modal verb “shall”

- **ask for advice:** *Oh, Alex, what **shall** we do?*
- **to make offers:** ***Shall** I help you?*
- **to make suggestions:** ***Shall** we go out this evening?*
- **promise:** *You **shall** have my answer tomorrow.*
- **threat or warning:** *He **shall** have a scandal. He **shall** have the worst scandal there has been in London for years.*
- **asking for permission:** ***Shall** I read? (Do, please! Don't, please!) Who **shall** answer the telephone, Major?*

XIX. To be about to (refers to the immediate future):

*e.g. I was **about to** make a dash for it! Hurry up! The film **is just about to** start.*

XX. To be due to (often refers to timetables):

*e.g. Don't be so impatient! She **isn't due to** arrive until teatime.
The train **is due to** come at 5.*

The Sequence of Tenses

The rules of the Sequence of Tenses mainly concern **object clauses**. The rules are as follows:

1. A present (or future) tense in the principal clause may be followed by any tense in the subordinate object clause:

*e.g. I have just been telling her (that) he — plays tennis well.
— had played two games before the storm began.
— will play tennis in summer.*

2. A past tense in the principal clause is followed by a past tense in the subordinate object clause:

e.g. I knew (that) he had played two games that day.

3. Tense changes (one tense back):

Present Simple	–	Past Simple (Present Simple)
Present Continuous	–	Past Continuous
Present Perfect	–	Past Perfect
Present Perfect Continuous	–	Past Perfect Continuous
Past Simple	–	Past Perfect (or stays the same)
Past Continuous	–	Past Continuous
Past Perfect	–	(doesn't change)
Future	–	Future-in-the-Past

4. Changes to time words:

here – there	now – then, at that time, at once
today – that day	a year ago – a year before
tomorrow – the next day (the following day)	now – then (at that moment)
yesterday – the day before (the previous day)	in 2 days – 2 days later
tonight – that night (tonight)	this – that (the)
last night – the previous night (the night before)	these – those
next Monday – the next Monday (the following Monday)	

5. The action expressed in the subordinate clause can be **simultaneous** with the action of the principal clause, **prior** or **posterior** to that of the principal clause.

Simultaneous actions	Prior Actions	Future actions
He said (that) – he was so much at home here. – they were waiting for us. – he had loved her since childhood.	He said (that) – he had changed his mind. – for the past 25 years he had been buying the same paper each morning.	He said (that) – they would come on Friday. – he would have translated the article by her departure.

The Sequence of Tenses is not observed:

- When the introductory verb is in present or future tenses (in the Present Perfect as well) there are no changes in verb tenses.
e.g. "She can drive a car", he says. = He says that she can drive a car.
- If the subordinate clause expresses **the universal truth, something habitual, customary or characteristic, laws of nature.**
*e.g. Galileo proved that the Earth moves round the sun. I told you I don't like milk.
 I felt like a man, who wants to fall down and go to sleep, but is forced to keep on walking.*
- In attributive clauses, adverbial clauses of cause and comparison (introduced by **as...as, than, as...that, less than, so... that, etc.**):
*e.g. Harris was so overcome with joy, that he fainted.
 Last year I worked less than I work now.*
- Past modals** don't change their form in reported speech:
should, ought to, could, might, would;

needn't, must (в значении совета и как предположение);
used to, had better.

e.g. *I thought you should come too. I knew he must visit his sick friend.*

She said, "You had better phone him." = She said that I had better phone him.

"I would love to know the answer," he said. = He said he would love to know the answer.

5. With the Subjunctive Mood.

e.g. *"If you studied more, you'd pass your test," he said. = He said that if I studied more, I'd pass my test.*

"I wish I were rich", he said. = He said he wished he were rich.

6. When the subordinate clause describes actions referring to the **actual present**, future or past time (**immediate response**), which usually occurs in dialogues or in newspaper, radio, TV reports. (It is up to date or still true).

e.g. *I was saying to you that as far as I have known Mrs. Jones, she has conducted herself well. He said he likes ice-cream (still true).*

The reporter announced that there are still a few men alive in these mountains.

Note. However the verb tenses usually change when something is not true or out of date.

e.g. *"I am rich", he said. = He said he was rich. (But we know he isn't. Not true)*

***But:** I came here to see how you were getting on.*

7. Past Tenses used in time clauses do not normally change.

e.g. *He said "We saw him when we were driving home".*

He said (that) they had seen him when they were driving home.

8. The Past Indefinite can stay the same if we use: **in 1945, 2 years ago, yesterday, last week, when he came, since.**

e.g. *He said that he left Paris 3 years ago. (But: He said he had left Paris 3 years before.)
*She said she had been writing since she came.**

9. The Past Continuous usually remains the same in reported speech.

e.g. *"I was reading while my parents were watching TV", she said. =*

She said she was reading while her parents were watching TV.

Direct and Indirect Speech

Introductory verbs	Direct speech	Indirect speech
agree + to-inf offer promise refuse threaten	"Yes, I'll help you." "Shall I open the door?" "Of course I'll pay you." "No, I won't go with you." "Stop crying or I'll punish you."	He agreed to help me. He offered to open the door. He promised to pay me. He refused to go with us. He threatened to punish me if I didn't stop crying.
advise + sb + to-inf ask beg command	"You should see a lawyer." "Could you help me?" "Please, please don't hurt her!" "Stand to attention!"	He advised me to see a lawyer. He asked me to help him. He begged me not to hurt her. He commanded the soldiers to stand to attention .

invite	<i>"Will you have dinner with me?"</i>	He invited me to have dinner with him.
order	<i>"Leave the cat alone!"</i>	She ordered me to leave the cat alone.
remind	<i>"Don't forget to ring Ann."</i>	She reminded me to ring Ann.
warn	<i>"Don't go near the rocks."</i>	He warned me not to go near the rocks.
admit + gerund	<i>"Yes, I told her the secret."</i>	He admitted telling her the secret.
accuse sb of	<i>"You took the money."</i>	He accused me of taking the money.
apologise for	<i>"I'm sorry I arrived so late."</i>	He apologized for arriving so late.
boast of (about)	<i>"I'm the fastest of all."</i>	He boasted of (about) being the fastest of all.
complain to sb of	<i>"I have a toothache."</i>	He complained to me of having a toothache.
deny	<i>"I didn't take the book."</i>	He denied taking the book.
insist on	<i>"You must come with us."</i>	He insisted on me/my going with them.
(say one) prefers	<i>"I'd rather do it myself."</i>	He said he preferred doing it himself.
suggest	<i>"Let's have a party."</i>	He suggested having a party.
agree + that-clause	<i>"Yes, it's a big house."</i>	He agreed that it was a big house.
complain	<i>"You are always lying to me."</i>	He complained that I was always lying to him.
deny	<i>"I didn't take that book."</i>	He denied that he had taken the book.
explain	<i>"That's why I didn't take it."</i>	He explained to me why /that he had taken the book.
exclaim/remark	<i>"What a sunny day it is!"</i>	He exclaimed/remarked that it was a sunny day.
promise	<i>"Of course I'll help you."</i>	He promised that he would help me.
suggest	<i>"You'd better see a doctor."</i>	He suggested that I should see a doctor.

1. Indirect statements are introduced by: *add, agree, call, congratulate, explain, greet, inform, introduce, notice, offer, say, tell, thank, wish, etc.* + **(that)**

He said, "I haven't read many English books." =

He said (that) he hadn't read many English books.

I said to my sister, "I haven't seen my uncle for a long time." =

I told my sister (that) I hadn't seen my uncle for a long time.

NB! He said (that)... He said to me (that)... He told _ me (that)...

Direct statement	Indirect statement
She said, "I can't swim."	She said (that) she couldn't swim.
She said to me, "I can't swim."	She said to me (that) she couldn't swim.
She told me, "I can't swim."	She told me (that) she couldn't swim.

2. **Indirect commands and requests** are expressed by **the Infinitive** or an **-ing form**.

The verbs most commonly used to introduce indirect orders: *advise, command, offer, order, suggest, tell, etc.*

For requests: *ask, beg, implore (умолять), urge (настаивать, уговаривать), etc.*

Direct command/request/suggestion	Indirect command/request/suggestion
He said to me, “ Come with me!”	He told me to go with him.
He said to me, “ Don’t lie to me!”	He told me not to lie to him.
He said, “Let’s go out.”	He suggested going out. (He suggested that we should go out.)

3. **Indirect general questions:** He asked + if/whether + direct word order.

*e.g. He said, “**Did you have** a nice time?” = He asked if/whether I **had had** a nice time.*

4. **Indirect special questions:** He asked + wh-word + direct word order.

*e.g. He said, “**Where did he stay?**” = He asked where he **had stayed**.*

The Passive Voice

to be + V₃

Aspect Tense	Indefinite	Continuous	Perfect	Perfect Continuous
Present	Letters are written every day	The letter is being written now	The letter has already been written	_____
Past	The letter was written yesterday	The letter was being written at 5 o’clock yesterday	The letter had been written by 5 o’clock	_____
Future	The letter will be written tomorrow	_____	The letter will have been written by 5 o’clock tomorrow	_____
Future in-the-Past	(He said that) the letter would be written the next day	_____	(He said that) the letter would have been written by 5 o’clock the next day	_____

be (for the Future Indefinite and modal verbs)

am, are, is was/were

being

been

The Passive Voice is used:

1. When the agent is unknown, unimportant or obvious from the context.

*The road repairs **were completed** last week. (Unimportant agent).*

- My car **was stolen** a fortnight ago. (Unknown agent).*
*The kidnappers **have been arrested**. (By the police – obvious agent).*
- To put emphasis on the agent.
Considerable contribution to the development of the Belarusian State University was made by academician V.I.Picheta, its first rector.
 - When the action is more important than the agent – as in news reports, formal notices, instructions, processes, headlines, advertisements, etc.
*The local bank **was robbed** this morning. (News report).*
*Taking pictures **is not allowed**. (Written notice).*
*Bread **is baked** in an oven for about 40 minutes. (Process).*
*Belarusian rarities **to be reprinted** in Germany.*
 - To make statements more polite or formal.
*My new suit **has been burnt**. (It's more polite than "You've burnt my suit".)*
*A lot of mistakes **have been made** in your test.*
 - Only with **transitive verbs** (verbs which take an object).
Charles Babbage, an English professor of mathematics, built the first computer in 1827. =
*The first computer **was built** by Charles Babbage in 1827.*
- Note.** The rules for choosing the passive tense forms are the same as in the active.

The Types of Passive Constructions

- Stative Passive describes an existing state rather than an action. The past participle functions as an adjective. There is no "by phrase". The action happened before.
*e.g. The house **was locked up** when they set off.*
- Dynamic Passive shows that the subject is acted upon, it undergoes an action.
*e.g. The house **had been locked up** before they set off.*
- Direct Passive – when direct object undergoes an action.
*e.g. **The money** was given to Tom.*
 Direct Passive forms 2 widely used constructions:
 - The complex subject (***He** is said to be a good doctor.*)
 - The construction with formal "**it**" as subject with the verbs denoting mental and physical perceptions, suggestion, order, request and decision and with the verbs of saying.
(It was known that he would not tolerate any criticism.)
 Only Direct Passive is used with verbs which take 2 objects, direct and prepositional:
announce, dedicate, devote, explain, point out, say, suggest, describe, dictate, propose, repeat.
*The rule **was explained** to us. (To whom?)*
(It is impossible to say: We were explained the rule.)
 The Indirect Passive with these verbs is possible only with a formal "it" as subject:
*(It **had been explained** to her that Sam had gone.)*
- Indirect Passive – when indirect object undergoes an action.
*e.g. **Tom** was given the money.*
(Someone gave Tom the money. "Tom" is an indirect object. "The money" is a direct object.)
 Both Direct and Indirect Passives may be used after the verbs: **to ask, bring, to give, to grant, to leave, to lend, to offer, to pay, to promise, to send, to show, to tell, to teach, etc.**
*e.g. **The money** was given to Tom. **Tom** was given the money.*
*A telegramme was sent to him. **He** was sent a telegramme.*

5. Prepositional Passive:

- verbs of speaking: *His book was commented on by the newspapers.*
- “to look” (at, for, into, after, upon): *He was looked upon as their leader.*
- verbs expressing mockery or blame: *She had an uncomfortable feeling that she was being laughed at.*
- a miscellaneous group of verbs: *to account for, to approve of, to deal with, to dispose of, etc.: Waste should be disposed of.*
Your absence must be accounted for. = Your absence must be explained.
- set phrases: *to get in touch with, to take care of, to find fault with, to make fun of, etc.*
adverbial modifiers of place: *The room looked as if it had not been lived in for years.*

6. Passive in writing but active in the meaning

(causative form – каузатив, понудительный залог):

to have something done

<i>She <u>cleans</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>has</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>is cleaning</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>is having</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>cleaned</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>had</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>was cleaning</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>was having</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>will clean</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>will have</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>will be cleaning</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>will be having</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>has cleaned</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>has had</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>has been cleaning</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>has been having</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>had cleaned</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>had had</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>had been cleaning</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>had been having</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>must clean</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>must have</u> her house cleaned</i>
<i>She <u>likes cleaning</u> her house</i>	= <i>She <u>likes having</u> her house cleaned</i>

7. Active in writing, but passive in the meaning:

My shirt washes well. This book sells well.

Former council houses are selling for over \$50,000 in some parts of the city.

8. If you want to say **who** or **what** caused the action, use **by + agent**.

*The telephone was invented **by** Bell. Who was this book written **by**?*

Compare: *He was wounded **by** a stone. = Его ранило камнем.*

*He was wounded **with** a stone. = Его ранили камнем (т.е. намеренно).*

9. Use **with + instrument or material** to say what instrument or material the agent used.

*The cake was made **with** flour, sugar and eggs. The house was built **with** wood and bricks.*

*The door was locked **by** a man **with** a key. The owner was shot **by** the robber **with** a gun.*

*He was hit on the head **by** the burglar **with** a piece of wood.*

*The room was filled **with** thick smoke.*

But: *The letter was written **in** pencil (**in** ink, **in** block letters). The hills are covered **in** snow.*

*Butter is made **from** milk. The shirt is made **of** cotton. Elephants are killed **for** ivory.*

10. Get is used instead of **be** in colloquial speech to talk about things that happened by accident or unexpectedly.

*She **got** sunburnt last week. = She **was** sunburnt last week.*

*Ten people **got** hurt in the car crash yesterday. = Ten people **were** hurt in the car crash yesterday.*

11. Personal/impersonal passive constructions with the verbs **to believe, to consider, to expect, to know, to report, to say, to think, to understand, etc.**

He is thought to have inherited a fortune. = It is thought (that) he has inherited a fortune.

She is expected to win first prize. = It is expected (that) she will win first prize.

Modal Verbs

Can, may, must, be to, have to, will, would, shall, should, ought to, need, dare.

Modal verbs express: ability, possibility, probability, logical assumptions, permission, requests, offers, suggestions, advice, criticism, obligation, prohibition, necessity.

They don't denote actions or states, but only show the speaker's attitude towards the action expressed by the infinitive in combination with which they form compound verbal predicates.

Ten of them (except for *be to* and *have to*) are called **defective or anomalous verbs**:

- a) they do not take -s in the 3d person singular;
- b) they have no verbals, so they have no analytical forms;
- c) they need no auxiliary to build up the interrogative and negative forms;
- d) they are followed by a bare infinitive (except for *ought to*);
- e) they have only one form and no past tense (except for *can and may*).

Full and contracted negative forms:

may not = mayn't	cannot = can't
must not = mustn't	shall not = shan't
would not = wouldn't	will not = won't
should not = shouldn't	
need not = needn't	
dare not = daren't	

Can

Equivalent	Present	Past	Future
to be able to do it is impossible I don't believe	can (can't, cannot) am, are, is able to do	could was, were able to do	————— will be able to do

I. Can + the non-perfect infinitive

1. Mental, physical, circumstantial ability or capacity (= to be able to).

He can solve the most difficult problems (he is able to solve, he is capable of solving).

I couldn't understand him when he spoke very fast (was unable to, was incapable of...).

But only **to be able to** combines the idea of "**ability**" and "**achievement**" (сумел, смог, удалось).

In this case it means "**managed to**" or "**succeeded in**", and **could** is impossible.

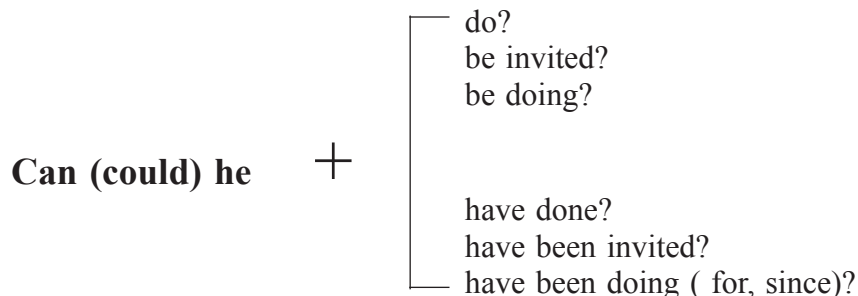
He was able to finish his work in an hour. (Он смог...)

2. Permission. *You can go now.*

3. Request. *Can you do me a favour? Could you come again tomorrow?* – more polite.

4. **Prohibition.** *You **can't** smoke here.* = *нельзя, не надо...*
 5. **Possibility.** *Anybody **can** make a mistake. The railways **can be** improved.*
*The Lower House alone **can initiate** financial measures.*
 6. **Can + the verbs of perception.** *I **can** smell something burning. I **can't** see anyone.*

II. Can + any form of the infinitive



1. Неужели? (astonishment, surprise):

*Can (could) he **have let** you down?*

2. Неужели не...? is translated into English in different ways:

a) by complex sentences:

*Can it **be** that you haven't seen him? = Неужели вы **не** видели его?*

b) by different lexical means:

*Can you **have failed** to see him? Can you **dislike** the book?*

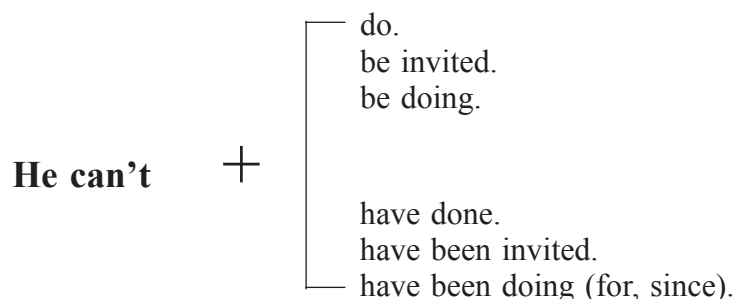
*Can **nobody** have seen him? Can he **have never** written that letter?*

3. Reproach (interchangeable with **might**):

*You **could** at least **have met** me at the station.*

4. Purpose:

*I wrote down the telephone number so that I **could** remember it.*



1. Не может быть, чтобы... (strong doubt, improbability, incredulity):

*He **can't** (couldn't) **be working** at this time. = Не может быть, что он работает в это время.*

*He **can't** (couldn't) **have seen** it. = Не может быть, чтобы он видел это.*

(**Could** is used instead of **can** to express greater doubt. The time-reference is indicated by the Infinitive)

Expressions with **can**

- **can't help doing something** = не могу не... (*I **can't help** admiring you.*)
- **can't but _do something** = не могу не... (*I **cannot but** suggest doing it.*)
- **one cannot but _wonder** = нельзя не задуматься
- **as can be** (an intensifying expression):
*They are as pleased **as can be**.* = Они очень (страшно) довольны.
*It's as ugly **as can be**.* = Это необычайно уродливо.

May

Equivalent	Present	Past	Future
to be allowed to (to be permitted to) perhaps, maybe	may (mayn't) am (are, is) allowed to	might (mightn't) was(were) allowed to	————— will be allowed to

I. May + the non-perfect infinitive

1. Permission:

*You **may go** now (you are allowed to go).*

***Might I use** your telephone, please? = (In polite requests for permission).*

When the action was permitted and performed the expression **was allowed to** is preferable.

*When translating the story we **were allowed to use** a dictionary, so I took a Longman new dictionary.*

2. Possibility of the fact (ВОЗМОЖНО, МОЖЕТ БЫТЬ):

*You **may find** all the books you want in the National Library.*

3. To talk about possible plans (МОГУ, ВОЗМОЖНО):

*We **may go** to Italy next summer.*

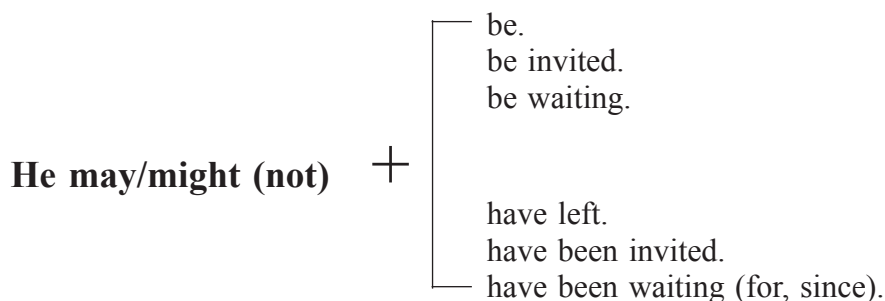
4. Prohibition:

*You **may not go** swimming! = He сме́й...*

Mustn't and **can't** are often found in negative answers to express prohibition instead of **may not**.

– *May I go out? – No, you **mustn't**. (No, you **can't**.) (Yes, you **may**.)*

II. May + any type of the infinitive



1. Supposition, uncertainty (in affirmative and negative sentences) = МОЖЕТ БЫТЬ, ВОЗМОЖНО.

*He **may come** or he **may not**. = Может быть, он придет, а может, и нет.*

The Perfect Infinitive indicates reference to the past: *He **may (might) have been hurt**.*

2. Reproach (only **might** in positive sentences).

*But you **might have helped** me! You **might at least offer** to help.*

In combination with the perfect infinitive it renders irritation (annoyance) that the action was not carried out: *You **might have opened** the door for me.*

3. **May (might)** partly loses its meaning when used as a **quasi-subjunctive auxiliary**.

a) in clauses of purpose: *He died so that others **might live**.*

b) in clauses of concession: ***Try as he may** he will never be top of his class.*

c) in object, predicative and appositive clauses after verbs or nouns expressing **fear, hope, wish**:

*The prisoner had hopes that he **might be set free**.*

*The doctor has fears that she **may not live** much longer.*

Expressions with *may (might)*:

1. Intention (I may (might) as well + Infinitive).

I may as well take you with me. = Я, пожалуй, возьму Вас с собой.

2. Suggestion or recommendation.

You may as well give him the letter.

3. To suggest alternative actions.

“**Just**” makes the sentence more emphatic:

That’s far too late. You might just as well not do it at all. = Ты с таким же успехом мог бы и вовсе этого не делать.

Must

Equivalent	Present	Past	Future
probably in all probability to be likely to be unlikely (they express probability in the future)	must (mustn’t)	_____	_____

I. Must + the non-perfect infinitive

1. a) Obligation, necessity (from the speaker’s point of view) = должен, надо, нужно. This meaning occurs in positive statements and questions and refers an obligation to the future.

He must move the furniture himself. Must you really go soon?

b) Absence of necessity = needn’t:

Must I go there tomorrow? – Yes, you must. (No, you needn’t. = Нет, не нужно.)

2. Prohibition (нельзя, не разрешается).

You mustn’t come into the ward, it’s against the rules. Cars must not be parked in front of this gate.

3. Emphatic advice, invitation. This use of *must* renders emphasis to the sentence.

You must stop worrying about your son. You must come and see us when you’re in London.

You must come and have dinner with us. You must come to our party.

4. Instructions, notices, orders.

Guests must be out of building by midnight. Passengers must cross the lines by the footbridge.

II. Must + any type of the infinitive

He must

+

be (only with stative verbs)
be invited.
be doing.

have done.
have been invited.
have been doing (for, since)

1. **Probability or supposition bordering on assurance, almost a conviction** (должно быть, вероятно). In this meaning it is used in affirmative sentences only.
*He **must be mad**. Jane is busy. She **must be packing** for the trip. (Present).*
*You **must have led** quite a busy social life. (A process in the past).*
2. **The negative meaning of probability** is expressed by **negative affixes, negative pronouns or lexically**:
*You must have **misunderstood** me. He must be quite **unaware** of the circumstances.*
*He must have had **no** chance to warn you. **No one** must have seen him there.*
*He must have **failed** to have dinner. The letter must have **never** reached him.*
3. **Emphatic usage of “must”**. It merely emphasizes some action or idea and is not translated into Russian:
*As we were starting **what must he do but cut** his finger (...он возьми да и порежь себе палец).*
*Just when we were ready to go away for the holidays, the baby **must catch measles** (ребенок вдруг заболел корью; ребенок возьми и заболеет корью).*
*At a time when everybody is in bed he **must turn on the wireless** (...он вдруг включает приемник).*
4. **Set phrases with “must”**.
 - a) **must needs**: *He **must needs** go there. = Он непременно должен пойти туда.*
 - b) **I must be going (I must be off)** = *Мне пора уходить.*
 - c) **I must tell you that... (I must say...)** = *(Я должен заметить...)* – are stereotyped phrases in which the meaning of obligation is considerably weakened in **must**.

Have to (have got to) + the non-perfect infinitive

Past	Present	Future
He had to get up early last year. He didn't have to get up early last year. Did he have to get up early last year?	He has to get up early. He doesn't have to get up early. Does he have to get up early?	He will have to get up early. He won't have to get up early. Will he have to get up early?

1. **Obligation or necessity arising out of circumstances** (приходится, вынужден).
*He **will have to work** here all day. **Having to work** alone, he wanted all his time for his research.*
*As a matter of fact I've **been having to spend** some time with the research people.*
*(In spoken English: He **has got to go** right now. **Has he got to go** right now?)*
2. **“To have to” replaces “must”**:
 - a) to express past necessity or obligation: *They **had to do** what they were told.*
 - b) to express absence of necessity (in the sense of “needn't”): *You **don't have to make** another copy.*
 - c) to express a future obligation: *You'll **have to take** a taxi if you mean to catch the train.*
3. **May + to have to**.
*We **may have to wait** long here. = Нам, возможно, придется долго здесь ждать.*
4. **Have got to** has the same basic meaning as **to have to**. **To have to** denotes a habitual action and **to have got to** denotes a particular one:
*Do you **have to get up** early every morning? **Have you got to get up** early tomorrow morning?*

Be to

It is used only in the Present and Past Indefinite Tenses
(am to, is to, are to; was to, were to)

1. **An obligation** arising out of an arrangement or plan (in statements and questions)(долженствование):

We are to complete this work by 5. I was to meet Mother at the dentist's at 10.

Who is to be the first? When am I to come?

Note. To emphasize that the action didn't take place the Perfect Infinitive is used after the Past Indefinite of the verb **to be to**:

I was to have met Mother at the station.

Diana was to have graduated in June, but unfortunately fell ill.

2. **An agreement or arrangement** (especially official) for the future, or referring to no particular time: *The German Chancellor is to visit France. A knife is to cut with.*
3. **A strict order or an instruction** given either by the speaker or by some official authority. *He is to return to Manchester in a fortnight. You are to stay here until I return. You are to go straight to your room. = Сейчас же иди в свою комнату!*

Note the difference between **to be to** and **to have to**

Soldiers have to salute their officers (such is customary obligation, the general rule).

All junior officers are to report to the colonel at once (an order).

4. **Strict prohibition** (only in the negative form).
You are not to smoke in this room. You are not to tell anybody about it. (Не смей...!)
5. **Something that is destined to happen or is unavoidable.** It corresponds to the Russian *предстоит, суждено*.
M. Lomonosov didn't know that he was to become a famous scientist. (... , что ему суждено было стать знаменитым ученым.)
If we are to be neighbours for life we should be on friendly terms. (Если нам предстоит всю жизнь быть соседями, ...)
He was never to see her again. (Ему больше никогда не суждено было ее увидеть.)
Sometimes it may be translated by the Russian verb *хотеть*, especially after the conjunction "if":
If we are to go there on time, we must start at once. (Если мы хотим прийти вовремя, надо сразу отправляться.)
6. **Impossibility** (in negative sentences). This meaning is similar to the meaning of *can* and *may*.
They are not to be trusted. Nothing was to be done under the circumstances.

Set expressions with **to be to**:

<i>What am I to do?</i>	= <i>Что мне делать? Как мне быть?</i>
<i>What is to become of me?</i>	= <i>Что со мною станет (будет)?</i>
<i>Where am I to go?</i>	= <i>Куда же мне деваться?</i>

Shall+ the non-perfect infinitive

1. Its meaning of **obligation** is now restricted to formal or even archaic style and is used in official documents. As a modal verb "shall" is not translated into Russian.
All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives. (Constitution of the United States).
2. With the 2nd and 3^d persons *shall* expresses **promise, threat or warning**.
You shall have my answer tomorrow. He shall have a scandal!

You shall stay just where you are!

She shall pay for it, she shall. The child shall be punished for it.

3. With the 1st and 3^d persons – **asking for permission, command.**
Shall I begin? – *Do, please! (Don't, please!)* (*Мне начинать? – Да.*)
Shall we begin? – *Yes, let's.* (*Нам начинать? – Давайте.*)
4. **A suggestion or offer** (in questions and offers in the 1st person).
"Shall I bring you some coffee, madam?" – *"Yes, please."*
Принести Вам кофе, мадам? – *Пожалуйста.*
"Shall I get you a chair?" – *"Yes, please."*

Should

1. **Instructions, corrections** [(не) следовало бы...].
You shouldn't miss the opportunity. They shouldn't have concealed it from us. He shouldn't have taken the corner at such speed. (*Ему не следовало поворачивать за угол на такой скорости.*)
2. **Obligation.**
All students should submit their work by present date. (...должны сдать...)
3. **Advice, desirability.**
You should consult a doctor. = *Показался бы ты врачу. Тебе следует показаться врачу.*
I think you should read this book. = *Думаю, что тебе следует (стоит) прочесть эту книгу.*
You shouldn't be sitting in the sun. He should have told me about it himself.
Your shoes are wet. You should have stayed at home.
4. **Probability.**
The guests shouldn't come for another hour. = *Гости вряд ли придут раньше, чем через час.*

Emotional "should"

Gives the statement emotional coloring such as surprise, amazement, irritation, indignation, pleasure, displeasure, etc. The Indicative Mood represents these facts in a more matter-of-fact way.

1. **In rhetorical questions beginning with "why":**
Why should I do it? (*Зачем мне...? С какой стати...?*)
2. **In object clauses beginning with "why":**
I don't see why we shouldn't make friends.
3. **In attributive clauses beginning with "why" after the noun "reason":**
I don't see any reason why he shouldn't be happy.
4. **In constructions of the following kind:**
 - a) *The door opened and who **should** come in but Tom.* (*Дверь открылась, и кто бы вы думали вошел? Не кто иной, как Том.*) *As I was crossing the street, whom **should** I meet but Aunt Ann.*
 - b) *That it **should** come to this!* (*И до чего дошло дело!*) *To think that it **should** have happened to me!* (*Только подумать, что это произошло со мной!*)
*"His illness caused me a lot of worry". – "So I **should** think".* (*Еще бы!*)
5. **In the set phrase:** *How **should** I know?* (*Почем я знаю?*)
6. **After the expressions:** *it is wonderful (absurd, monstrous, natural, odd, queer, strange, terrible); it infuriated (outraged, puzzled, startled, surprised) me, etc.*
*It infuriated her that he **should** have spoken to her in such a tone.*

Ought to

- Moral duty, moral obligation** (следует, следовало бы).
You ought to look after your children better (you don't always do it). He ought to be punished, oughtn't he? You ought to feel some respect for your elders.
When used with the Perfect Infinitive **ought to** means that a desirable action hasn't been carried out and implies **reproach**.
You ought to have helped him (but you didn't) = Вам следовало бы ему помочь.
He ought to have been more careful. = Ему следовало бы быть более осторожным.
- Advisability, desirability.**
You ought to see a doctor. We really ought to buy a new car, oughtn't we?
- Probability** (должно быть, наверное). In this sense **ought to** is a weaker equivalent of **must**.
You ought to be hungry by now. = Вы, наверное, уже проголодались.
Apples ought to grow well here. = Здесь должны хорошо расти яблоки.
If he started at six he ought to be here by ten. = Если он выехал в 6.00, то он должен быть здесь к десяти часам.
In this sense **ought to** is a weaker equivalent of **must** when the latter denotes near certainty.
- To describe something exciting, funny or beautiful** in the meaning of *I wish you could*.
You ought to hear the way he plays the piano!

Will

It combines its **modal meaning** with its functioning as **an auxiliary verb** expressing futurity. **Will and would** are looked upon as forms of the same verb, although in a few cases their meanings differ.

I. Will (would) + the non-perfect Infinitive

- Willingness, intention, determination** (непреренно, обязательно, охотно).
Would in this meaning shows reference to the past.
I will write as soon as I can. = Я непременно напишу, как только смогу.
If you will wait for me I'll be very grateful. = Если вы согласитесь подождать меня, я буду очень благодарен.
In negative sentences it denotes **refusal**:
I won't accept your offer. They wouldn't listen to me.
- A polite request or an offer.**
Will you pass me the salt, please? Would you pass me the salt, please? (More polite).
- A command.**
You will do exactly as I say. Will you be quiet? = Замолчишь ли ты наконец?
Shut the door, will you? Shut the door, won't you?
- Insistence, resistance.** **Will and would** are stressed here.
He `will try to mend it himself (he insists on mending it himself).
I `won't have you speak to me like that. = Я не допущу, чтобы...
When an inanimate object **fails to perform its immediate function** (никак не...):
My car won't (wouldn't) start. = Моя машина никак не заводится (не заводилась).
He had a wound that wouldn't heal. = У него была рана, которая никак не заживала.
The engine wouldn't start. = Мотор никак не заводился.
- Inevitability, characteristic behaviour, quality or something naturally expected.**
What will be will be. = Чему быть, того не миновать.
Boys will be boys. = Мальчишки остаются мальчишками.
Accidents will happen. = Без несчастных случаев дело не обходится.

Truth will out. = Истины не утаишь.

Oil will float on water. This car will hold four people comfortably.

II. Will (would) + any type of the Infinitive

1. Prediction, a certainty about the present or the future (in a similar way as *must*).

This will be the school, I believe. = Это, по-видимому, и есть школа.

This will be our train. = Это, наверное, наш поезд.

That would be he! = Это, наверное, он.

In the following sentence *must* is impossible as with a perfect infinitive it has a reference to the past:

She will have arrived by now. = Она наверняка уже придет к этому времени.

Would

1. It is used rather sarcastically to express that something was to be expected (often with disapproval).

"Auntie Meg has been very brave". "Yes. She would be brave." (Этого и следовало ожидать. Да, она такая. На нее похоже.)

"He talked of his new car the whole evening." "Oh, yes, he would."

"He didn't agree with me." "He wouldn't". (На него похоже.)

You would be late! = Конечно, ты опять опоздал.

2. Would rather (sooner) + V (to prefer):

I would rather do it myself. He would sooner die than let me think he was a failure.

3. Would... mind (to object):

Would you mind my staying here for a while? I wouldn't mind your telling them about it.

4. Would... mind (a polite request):

Would you mind getting me a cup of tea?

5. In the Subjunctive Mood:

If he were not ill he would come. (Subjunctive II).

If he hadn't been ill he would have come. (Subjunctive IV).

I wish somebody would take the receiver. I wish you would help me. (Wish-clauses).

It would be great if you would dine with us. (Unreal future actions – если бы Вы согласились...) *I'd rather you hadn't told all those lies.*

Note the expression: *You would, would you?* = Ах, ты так!

Will = Would

1. When they express habitual or recurrent actions (= used to do).

She will (would) sit for hours under the old oak tree. (Любит [любила] сидеть...) = *She used to sit.*

2. When they express refusal to perform an action.

He was wet through, but he wouldn't change.

Он промок насквозь, но ни за что не хотел переодеться.

3. When a lifeless thing fails to perform its immediate function.

My car won't (wouldn't) start. = Моя машина никак не заводится (не заводилась).

He (has) had a wound that(won't) wouldn't heal. = У него была рана, которая никак не заживала.

4. When they are used with the first person to express willingness, intention, determination.

But if you won't come home, you'd better try staying in tonight.

I will make money. I said I would do anything for him.

5. In polite requests.

Won't you sit down? Would you do it? Will you pass me the salt, please?

Open the door, will you? Don't open the door, will you? Would you tell me what's happened?

6. In clauses of condition (if + will [would]) to express willingness, consent (если бы Вы согласились, захотели...)
*If you **would stand** by me I should have another try.*
*I think I **will go** and **watch** the telly if you **will excuse** me.*

Need

as a defective verb:	as a regular verb:
<p>1. is used in questions and negations for particular occasions. <i>You needn't do it just now.</i> <i>Need I show you my pass now?</i> <i>You needn't apologise, Mrs Gerhard.</i></p> <p>2. The defective <i>need</i> in negative sentences indicates that the action, although unnecessary, was carried out. <i>You needn't have come. Вы зря пришли. (Вам незачем было приходить.)</i></p>	<p>1. is used in all types of sentences to denote habitual actions. <i>Do you need to work so hard?</i> <i>Do I need to show you my pass every time?</i> <i>You don't need to say it every time you see him.</i></p> <p>2. The regular <i>need</i> in negative sentences indicates that the action was not done because it was unnecessary: <i>She didn't need to open the drawer because it was already open.</i></p>

1. **Need** expresses **necessity** (нужно). In questions and negations it is a replacement for *must* or *have (got) to*.
2. **Needn't + the perfect infinitive** indicates that the action was performed but **was not necessary**.
 It implies a waste of time or effort, and is therefore translated by *зря, незачем, не к чему было*.
*You **needn't have spent** all the money.*
Зря ты потратил все деньги. (Не к чему было тратить все деньги.)
3. **Didn't have to do** means that the action wasn't performed.
*The police **didn't have to break** the door as it was open. (...не пришлось...)*

Dare (dared)

as a defective verb (сметь) (chiefly in interrogative and negative sentences):	as a regular verb:
<p>1. To have the courage or independence to do something, to venture. <i>How dare you speak to me like that?</i> <i>Как смеешь ты так со мной разговаривать?</i> <i>He dared not approach her.</i> <i>Он не посмел к ней приблизиться.</i> <i>He daren't write anything in case it isn't good.</i></p>	<p>1. To venture, to have courage or impudence (like the defective <i>dare</i>). It is used mainly in negative statements. <i>She doesn't dare to answer.</i> <i>He didn't dare to approach her.</i> <i>Don't you dare to touch me.</i></p> <p>2. To challenge, to defy (вызывать, бросать вызов). <i>I dared him to jump.</i> <i>(I challenged him to do it.)</i> <i>I dare you to say this straight to her face.</i> <i>(Попробуй, скажи ей это прямо в лицо.)</i></p>

- I dare say (the colloquial phrase): осмелюсь сказать, полагаю, пожалуй, очень возможно)
*I **dare say** he will come later. = Полагаю (пожалуй), он придет позже.*
*I **dare say** you are right. = Очень возможно, что Вы правы.*

Modal Verbs

№	Meaning	Means of Expressing
1	Possibility/impossibility (возможность/невозможность)	<p>can (could) – могу (мог) по обстоятельствам Anybody can make a mistake. (Ошибаться может каждый.)</p> <p>may (только в утвердит. предложениях) = can=It's possible – могу по факту You may (can) find everything here. (Вы можете найти здесь все.) Can he buy it here? (Он может это здесь купить?)</p> <p>be able to, not be able to, be unable to – вместо can и can't, когда они не употребляются, а также в значении «смог»/ «не смог». He had been unable to get a ticket. (Он не <u>смог</u>...)</p>
2	Probability, assurance (вероятность, уверенность)	<p>must (probably, evidently, likely, unlikely) – должно быть, вероятно, очевидно. (Неперфектный инфинитив относит действие к настоящему времени, перфектный – к прошедшему): He must be mad. He must have lost it. Must не используется для будущего (используются его эквиваленты). He will probably feel lonely. It is (un)likely to rain.</p> <p>will/would That will be my wife. (Это, конечно, моя жена.)</p> <p>ought to – что-то ожидаемое: должно быть, наверное. You ought to be hungry by now. (Вы, наверное, голодны.) Apples ought to grow well here. (Здесь должны хорошо расти яблоки.)</p> <p>should = ought to (но только для настоящего или будущего времени). The guests shouldn't come. (Гости вряд ли придут.)</p>
3	Supposition, uncertainty (предположение, неуверенность)	<p>may/might (maybe, perhaps) – может быть, возможно (неперфектный инфинитив относит действие к наст. или будущему, перфектный – к прошлому). They may arrive tomorrow. (Они, возможно, придут завтра.) They may have arrived yesterday. (Может быть, они уже приехали вчера.)</p>
4	Physical ability (физическая возможность, умение)	<p>can – умею, могу could – умел, мог</p>
5	Reproach (упрек)	<p>ought not to + the Perfect Infinitive shouldn't + the Perfect Infinitive (не следовало бы): You oughtn't to have laughed at his mistake. (Вам не следовало смеяться над его ошибкой.)</p> <p>could, might (мог бы): But you might have helped me. (Но Вы могли бы мне помочь!)</p> <p>could, might + the Perfect Infinitive – раздражение ought to + the Perfect Infinitive – следовало бы You ought to have helped him. (Тебе следовало бы помочь ему.)</p>
6	Surprise (удивление)	<p>can, could (большая степень удивления) – неужели? Can it be so late? (Неужели уже так поздно?) – настоящее время. Прошедшие действия передаются через Perfect Infinitive: Can it have been so late? (Неужели было так поздно?)</p>
7	Permission (разрешение)	<p>may, might (официально) – можно? Might I borrow your book? – Можно мне взять вашу книгу? be allowed to – разрешено кем-то и исполнено We were allowed to use a dictionary, so I took my new one. (Нам разрешили пользоваться словарем, поэтому я взял мой новый словарь.)</p>
8	Invitation (приглашение)	<p>must You must come and see me! (Вы обязательно должны прийти навестить меня!)</p>

9	Suggestion /offer (предложение)	shall Shall I read? (Мне читать?)
10	Polite requests (вежливые просьбы)	can, could (более вежливо) Could you help me? (Не могли бы Вы мне помочь?) will, would (более вежливо) Would you please pass the salt? (Не могли бы Вы передать соль?)
11	Threat or warning (угроза, предупреждение)	shall That day shall come. (Этот день придет.) She shall pay for it, she shall. You shall suffer.
12	Necessity/absence of necessity (необходимость совершения действия/отсутствии необходимости)	needn't You needn't apologise. (Present.) You needn't have done it. (Past.) – зря, не к чему было Must I go? – No, you needn't, if you don't want to.
13	Advice (совет)	should, ought to – следует, следовало бы You should stay in bed. (Вам нужно (следует) лежать в постели.)
14	Obligation (долженствование)	must – должен, нужно (для наст. и будущих действий). Долженствование исходит от говорящего. You must be back at 2 o'clock. Для выражения прошедших действий используется to have to : (Did you have to write a dictation? = Ты должен был писать диктант?) to have to – приходится, вынужден (долженствование ввиду внешних обстоятельств) She had to get up early last year. (Ей приходилось рано вставать в прошлом году.) to be to – долженствование по плану, по договоренности, по расписанию When is the wedding to be? (Когда должна состояться свадебная церемония?) The ship was to dock on Friday. I was to <u>have met</u> my friend at the Zoo! (The Perfect Infinitive указывает на то, что действие не совершилось). need – нужно Do you need to work so hard? (Тебе на самом деле надо работать так много?) В вопросе говорящий надеется на отрицательный ответ: Need she go there? (А ей туда нужно идти?)
15	Doubt, incredulity (сомнение, недоверие)	can't, couldn't (большая степень сомнения) – не может быть He can't be so old. (Не может быть, что он так стар.) He couldn't have told the truth. (Не может быть, чтобы он сказал правду.) – The Perfect Infinitive относит действие к прошлому.
16	Prohibition (запрет)	mustn't, be not to – нельзя, запрещено Visitors mustn't feed animals in the zoo. (Посетителям нельзя кормить животных в зоопарке.) You are not to smoke in this room. (Не смей курить в этой комнате!) may not – не смей You may not go swimming! (Не смей плавать!) shouldn't – слабый запрет You shouldn't swim in the cold river. (Тебе не следует плавать в холодной реке.)
17	Moral duty, moral obligation (моральное долженствование)	ought to (предпочтительнее), should – следует You ought to look after your children better. (Вам следует больше заботиться о детях.) You ought to be polite. (Вы должны быть вежливы (вам следует быть вежливыми).) You ought to have helped the elderly woman. (A desirable action hasn't been carried out, and it, therefore, implies reproach.)

The Subjunctive Mood. Conditional sentences

(the Sequence of Tenses is not observed)

If-clause				Principal clause		
Aspect Mood	Subjunctive I	Subjunctive II		Subjunctive III	Subjunctive IV	Time
	Simultaneous Action	Common	be _____	were _____	should be	should would should would
tell		Present Subjunctive	told	Past Subjunctive	should tell	be tell
Durative	_____		_____		_____	_____
be telling	Present Subjunctive	were telling	Past Subjunctive	should be telling	should telling would	be
Prior Action		Common		_____	had been _____	should have been
	_____	Present Subjunctive	had told	Past Subjunctive	should have told	have have have
Durative	_____		_____		_____	_____
_____	Present Subjunctive	had been telling	Past Subjunctive	should have been telling	should been would telling	have

The Markers

- **If** (если бы); **If only = I wish** (если бы; жаль...);
- **as if (as though)** – как будто бы; – **even if (even though)** – даже если бы;
- **so that + could (might)** – с тем, чтобы; **so that + shouldn't + V** (for negative sentences);
- **But for = (if it were not for you...; – if it hadn't been for you)** – если бы не...);

- **Had I known...; Were it...;**
- **lest** – с тем, чтобы не...; **I fear lest** – боюсь, как бы не...;
- **It's (high) time (about time)** + Past Simple (давно пора бы...)
- **Suppose (supposing)** you were asked to move out, what would you do? = (present)
- **Suppose** he had been seen stealing the money, what would he have done? = (past)
- **I'd rather (sooner)** you went now. = Вам бы лучше уйму. = (present)
- **I'd rather (sooner)** you hadn't told all those lies. = (past)

Conditional I (real): *If the weather is nice, we shall go to the country.*

Subjunctive I (urging phrases)	<i>They proposed that he borrow the money from the bank. He ordered that the goods be sent immediately. Manners be hanged.</i>	V₁
Subjunctive II (present or future unreal actions)	If + the Past Indefinite; the Subject + would (should) + V₁	
	<i>If the rain stopped, they would go for a walk. We might (could) save enough if you worked overtime. If I were you...(to be = "were" for all persons) Were it warmer now, I should bathe in the sea. (Будь сейчас теплее...) Her eyes were sparkling as though she were laughing at us. It's (high) time (it's about time) you did it. (Вам бы давно пора...)</i>	
Subjunctive III (urging phrases with "should" for all persons)	(that) + the Subject + should + V₁	
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. <i>It is desirable It is necessary It is suggested</i> } ... that they should go there. 2. Urging phrases with the verbs of inducement (глаголы побуждения): <i>to suggest, to order, to insist, to command, to urge, etc.</i> or with nouns <i>suggestion, order, command, arrangement, decision, wish, etc.</i> <i>They suggested that the issue should be discussed in a week. My suggestion is that he should go there and see what we can do.</i> 3. Expressions of fear + lest + should + V (боюсь, как бы не...): <i>I fear lest it should rain. They were terrified lest someone should discover their secret hiding place.</i> 4. Clauses of purpose introduced by the conjunction lest (чтобы...не): <i>Ring me up lest I should forget about my promise. He withdrew his eyes lest she should read them.</i> 	
Subjunctive IV (unreal actions in the past)	If + Past Perfect; I should (would) + the Perfect Infinitive.	
	<i>If I hadn't been stuck in a traffic jam, I would have been in time for the wedding ceremony. If you had been listening, you would have heard what I said. Had I known about it then, I shouldn't have done it. (Знай я об этом...)</i>	
Mixed Subjunctive:	(Subjunctive IV + Subjunctive II):	
	<i>If Bill Gates hadn't been in the right place at the right time, he wouldn't probably be the richest man in the world now.</i>	
	(Subjunctive II + Subjunctive IV):	
	<i>If he knew, he would have told me. I'm sure he knows nothing. If he were not so absent-minded, he wouldn't have mistaken you for your cousin.</i>	

WISH + SUBJUNCTIVE = IF ONLY...!

1. wish + Past Simple	<p><u>unreal actions in the present and in the future:</u> <i>I wish (If only) it <u>were</u> summer now.</i> <i>Как бы мне хотелось, чтобы сейчас было лето. Жаль, что сейчас не лето.</i> <i>I wish (If only) I <u>were going</u> on holiday with you!</i> <i>Если бы я ехал в отпуск с вами!</i> <i>I wish you <u>were</u> here.</i> <i>Как жаль, что тебя нет рядом.</i></p>
2. wish + Past Perfect	<p><u>unreal actions in the past:</u> <i>I wish (If only) I <u>had phoned</u> him yesterday.</i> <i>(It's a pity I didn't phone him yesterday) =</i> <i>=Как жаль, что я не позвонил ему вчера.</i> <i>If only I <u>had listened</u> to you!</i></p>
3. wish + could + V	<p><u>a wish in the future which cannot be fulfilled:</u> <i>I wish (If only) they <u>could come</u> to see me tomorrow.</i> <i>Как жаль, что они не смогут прийти ко мне завтра.</i></p>
4. wish + you + would + V	<p><u>a polite (impolite) request, an equivalent of the Imperative Mood:</u> <i>I wish you <u>would help</u> me. = Помогите мне, пожалуйста.</i> <i>I wish you <u>would go</u> away. = Скорее бы вы ушли!</i> <i>I wish you <u>would stop</u> smoking. = Я бы хотел, чтобы ты бросил курить.</i> <i>I wish you <u>would keep</u> quiet!</i></p>
5. wish + they (he, she, it)+ + would + V	<p><u>in exclamatory emphatic sentences to express irritation, indignation, complaint, criticism:</u> <i>I wish the music <u>would stop</u>.</i> <i>Когда же, наконец, прекратится эта музыка!</i> <i>I wish they <u>would come</u> and <u>see</u> me some day.</i> <i>Хоть бы они навестили меня когда-нибудь!</i></p>

Note. In object clauses after “**would rather**” the same forms are used as after “**wish**”.
*e.g. He'd rather they **left** him alone. I'd rather he **hadn't spoken** in that abrupt manner.*

The Use of Forms Expressing Unreality in Adverbial Clauses

Adverbial Clauses of Purpose

(с тем, чтобы (не)...))

1. so that + could: *He opened the door **so that he could hear** what the women were saying.*
2. so that + might: *She dressed quickly for dinner **so that she might see** him the sooner.*
3. so that + shouldn't: *I stood up, my back turned **so that he shouldn't see** my face.*
(negatives)

Adverbial Clauses of Comparison (как будто бы...; как если бы...)

1. as if: *Her lips moved soundlessly, as if she were rehearsing. (Subjunctive II).*
She was breathing fast and deep, as if she had been running. (Subjunctive IV).
2. as though: *Her eyes were sparkling as though she were laughing. (Subjunctive II).*
His voice sounded hoarse, as though he had been shouting into the wind for hours. (Subjunctive IV).

Adverbial Clauses of Concession (даже если бы...)

1. even if:
Even if you were right, I should be prepared for any contingency. (Subjunctive II).
Even if I had been a stranger he would have talked of his misfortune. (Subjunctive IV).
2. even though:
Even though I saw her at the party I could do nothing for you. (Subjunctive II).
Even though I had seen her at the party I could have done nothing for you. (Subjunctive IV).

Means of Expressing Unreal Future Actions

1. Subjunctive II.

Half of the people would distrust you if you went away at such a moment.

2. To be to.

If she were to occupy the room it would look so different.

3. If (in case) + should +V (случись так, что...)

I'll let you know in case there should be some unavoidable delay.

If you should see Pearl, give her my love. = Если тебе случится встретить там Перл, передай ей от меня привет.

Should you want to do so you can withdraw your money at any time. (Inversion).

4. If + would+V (consent, willingness) = Если бы Вы согласились (захотели)...

I would love it if you would call me Eliza. If you would only come to our place, we'll be very glad.

Traditional Use of Forms Expressing Unreality

To express wish (in slogans):

<i>Long live the Queen (the King)!</i>	= Да здравствует королева (король)!
<i>God save the Queen (the King)!</i>	= Боже, храни королеву (короля)!
<i>God bless you!</i>	= Благослови вас Господь!
<i>Heaven forbid.</i>	= Не дай Бог.
<i>Success attend you!</i>	= Да сопутствует вам успех!
<i>Long live the bride and groom!</i>	= Да здравствуют жених и невеста!

Concession:

<i>So be it!</i>	= <i>Да будет так! Пусть будет так!</i>
<i>Come what will (may)</i>	= <i>Будь что будет.</i>
<i>Be that as it may...</i>	= <i>Как бы там ни было...</i>
<i>Happen what may...</i>	= <i>Что будет, то будет...</i>

In some expressions:

<i>Far be it from me...</i>	= <i>Я далек от того, чтобы...</i>
<i>Far be it from me to conceal the truth!</i>	= <i>Чтобы я скрывал правду!</i>
<i>Far be it from me to talk back!</i>	= <i>Чтобы я грубил!</i>
<i>Suffice to say that...</i>	= <i>Достаточно сказать, что...</i>
<i>As (ill) luck would have it,</i>	= <i>По счастливому стечению обстоятельств...</i>
<i>I was invited for that night.</i>	(<i>На беду; как назло...</i>)

In oaths, curses and imprecations (проклятия):

<i>Manners be hanged!</i>	= <i>К черту хорошие манеры.</i>
<i>Confound these flies!</i>	= <i>Будь прокляты эти мухи!</i>
<i>The Devil take him!</i>	= <i>Черт его побори!</i>

In the set phrase “*as it were*” (так сказать, как бы...):

They were silent and, as it were, oppressed. Her portrait had been, as it were, stamped on his heart. He is my best friend, my second self, as it were.

THE NOUN

- a) **Proper nouns:** *May, Sam, New Year, "Newsweek"* b) **Common nouns:** *kitten, rain, table*
c) **Countable nouns:** *toy, flower, flat, school* d) **Uncountable nouns:** *sugar, money*
e) **Concrete nouns:** *table, book, window* f) **Abstract nouns:** *idea, knowledge*
g) **Animate:** *girl, boy, puppy, servant* h) **Inanimate:** *wind, meeting, ship*

Formation

- 1. Conversion (nouns from verbs):** *to work – a work, to smell – a smell, to touch – a touch.*
- 2. Stress change:** *to im`port – `import, to con`tact – `contact, to ex`port – `export.*
- 3. Composition:** *two or more stems form a noun: girlfriend, passer-by, lady-bird.*
- 4. Affixation:** *rage – outrage, courage – discouragement, habit – habitation.*
- 5. Deflexion – derivation by changing vowels:** *long – length, wide – width, choose – choice, lose – loss, deep – depth, broad – breadth, breathe – breath.*

Noun-forming Suffixes

Abstract nouns

- ance: admittance, acceptance, annoyance, appearance, arrogance, reluctance, importance
-age: leakage, vicarage, marriage
-al: betrayal, portrayal, refusal
-ancy/ -ency: vacancy, tendency
-bility: acceptability, advisability, possibility, sensibility; but: hospitable – hospitality
-cy: privacy, supremacy, legacy
-dom: freedom, kingdom, boredom
-ence: absence, correspondence, dependence, existence, experience, occurrence, patience, violence
-hood: brotherhood, childhood
-ing: meaning, cleaning, building
-ion/-sion/-tion/-ation: operation, tension, examination, suggestion, combination
-ism: darwinism, patriotism
-ity: ability, equality, security, generosity; major – majority, minor – minority
-ment: agreement, advertisement, encouragement, environment, unemployment
-ness: awareness, darkness, emptiness, loneliness, tenderness, weakness
-ous/osity: curious – curiosity, generous – generosity;
 But: hilarious – hilarity, prosperous – prosperity
-ship: friendship, membership, ownership
-ty: cruelty, sanity, banality
-t: complaint, weight, height

-th:	breadth, depth, growth, hundredth, length, strength, warmth, wealth, width, truth
-ure:	culture, structure, pressure, departure
-y:	difficulty, honesty

Concrete nouns

-ar:	liar
-eer:	auctioneer, profiteer, racketeer, sonneteer
-(i)an:	physician, Parisian, republican
-ant/ent:	assistant, student, informant
-arian:	vegetarian, librarian
-ee:	refugee, employee, payee, addressee, debtee (заимодавец, кредитор)
-er:	teacher, worker, singer, employer
-ician:	musician, politician, academician
-ist:	socialist, artist, physicist, scientist
-or:	visitor, actor, debtor (должник, дебитор)

Feminine suffixes

-ess:	actress, tigress, waitress, hostess
-ine:	heroine
-ix:	propriatrix, executrix
-ette:	usherette

Diminutive suffixes

-let:	islet, piglet, starlet, scarlet, booklet, rivulet
-ling:	duckling
-ie:	doggie, wolfie, auntie, foxie, sweetie
-y:	mummy, daddy, mousy, Meggy, Kitty

Prefixes

re-:	reconstruction, reduction
co-:	co-author, cooperation, coexistence
dis-:	disarmament, disagreement, dissatisfaction
il-:	illiteracy
im-:	impossibility
in-:	inability
inter-:	interaction
mis-:	misfortune, misunderstanding
non-:	non-existence, non-European, nonsense
over-:	overestimation, overproduction
pre-:	precaution
sub-:	subdivision
un-:	unemployment
under-:	under-secretary (заместитель или помощник министра), undernutrition (undernourishment), underground, undershirt, underwear, understudy, underweight.

Compound nouns

Compound nouns consist of at least two stems. The meaning of a compound is not a mere sum of its elements. The main types of compound nouns are:

Noun stem + noun stem:	seaman (моряк) , airmail (авиапочта)
Adjective stem + noun stem:	bluebell (колокольчик), blackbird (черный дрозд)
Verb stem + noun stem:	pickpocket (карманный вор)
Gerund + noun stem:	looking-glass (зеркало), dancing-hall (танцевальный зал)
Noun stem + prepositions + + noun stem:	father-in-law (свекр, тесть), mother-in-law (свекровь, теща), man-of-war (военный корабль)
Substantivized phrases:	forget-me-not (незабудка), pick-me-up (тонизирующий напиток).

The Number of Nouns

- By adding “-s”:
 - boys, schools; cats, apartments*
 - “oo”: *bamboos, kangaroos, zoos*
 - “o”: – in abbreviations (*kilos, photos*);
– in borrowed words (*pianos, concertos, dynamos, tangos, tobaccos, solos*);
– in proper names (*Romeos, Eskimos*)
- By adding ‘s in the plural of letters, dates and abbreviations: *two c’s; the 1960’s (or 1960s); MP’s (or MPs); No if’s and not’s. Do’s and don’ts.*
- By adding “-es”:
 - Negroes, potatoes, tomatoes, dominoes, vetoes, embargoes, torpedoes, echoes, heroes.*
 - after “ch”, “s”, “sh”, “z”, “x” (sibilant sounds): *kiss – kisses; brush – brushes; church – churches; box – boxes; size – sizes, quiz – quizzes, garage – garages, bridge – bridges.*
- Either “-s” or “-es”:
dodo(e)s, dingo(e)s, buffalo(e)s, banjo(e)s, zero(e)s, volcano(e)s, tornado(e)s, cargo(e)s, motto(e)s, mosquito(e)s.
- Words ending in “-y”, with a consonant immediately before it, change “-y” to “-ies”:
lady – ladies, fly – flies, story – stories, city – cities, army – armies, factory – factories.
But: – *Februarys, Januarys, the Kennedys, Marys, the two Germanys.*
– in compounds : *stand-bys, lay-bys.*
Words ending in “-y” with a vowel before it, simply add “-s”: *valley – valleys; donkey – donkeys; day – days; way – ways, guy – guys.*
But: – **quy (soliloquy – soliloquies)** – монолог, etc.
- With compound nouns, if they are made of two nouns, only the last part takes the plural form:
housemaid – housemaids, shoemaker – shoemakers, classroom – classrooms, armchair – armchairs, boy-scout – boy-scouts, tooth-brush – tooth-brushes, maid-servant – maid-servants.
- We use the plurals *men* and *women* to modify plural nouns when they have a “**subject**” meaning:

<i>men drivers</i>	= <i>men who drive</i>
<i>women pilots</i>	= <i>women who fly planes</i>
<i>women teachers</i>	= <i>women who teach</i>

Man and *woman* are used to express an “**object**” meaning:

man-eaters = lions or tigers that eat people

woman-haters = people who hate women

8. In compound nouns originating from a prepositional noun phrase, where the preposition is a linking element, only the first noun takes the plural form:

father-in-law = *fathers-in-law* *commander-in-chief* = *commanders-in-chief*

9. In compounds the last component takes the plural form when it is a substantivized phrase, which doesn't contain a noun:

forget-me-nots, *merry-go-rounds*, *drop-outs*, *lay-bys*, *stand-bys*, *go-betweenes*.

10. In compounds “noun + preposition”: *passers-by*, *lookers-on*.

11. Compounds in “-ful” have plural ending at the end of the word: *thimblefuls* (*нанеп-смку*)

Though: *handfuls* = *handsful*, *spoonfuls* = *spoonsful*, *mouthfuls* = *mouthsful*.

Singularia tantum	Pluralia tantum
<p>1. Names of materials: <i>iron, coal, water, air.</i></p> <p>2. Uncountable abstract nouns: <i>anger, curiosity, generosity, knowledge, progress.</i></p> <p>3. <i>The news, advice, information, furniture</i> (a piece of news, a piece of advice, a piece of information, a piece of furniture), <i>accommodation, baggage (luggage), chaos, environment, fun, fruit, knowledge, luck, money, nature, research, weather, work, scenery, space, traffic, trouble</i> (never used with “a”).</p> <p>4. Nouns ending in “-ics”: <i>ethics, mathematics, optics, phonetics, physics, politics, statistics</i> (is).</p>	<p>1. Things consisting of two parts: <i>braces, pincers, pyjamas, scissors, scales, trousers</i> (are).</p> <p>2. Some games: <i>billiards, cards, dominoes, draughts, bowls</i> (is).</p> <p>3. Miscellaneous nouns: <i>contents, clothes, credentials, customs, bowels, belongings, dregs, goods, home-comings, hangings, savings, surroundings, riches, oats, suds, proceedings, thanks, troops, whereabouts, winnings</i> (are).</p> <p>4. <i>The police, the military, the vermin, people, cattle, poultry</i> (are).</p>

Note. 1. Collective nouns (*audience, the aristocracy, band, the bourgeoisie, board, choir, the clergy, committee, company, crew, crowd, family, the gentry, government, group, jury, the public, staff, team, university, etc.*) may indicate the group as a **single undivided body** and take a **singular** verb:

e.g. *His family was well known in their town. The team was playing well.*

2. When they indicate the group as a **collection of individuals**, they take a **plural** verb:

e.g. *My family are at table. The team were playing well.*

Irregular Plurals

1. *man* – **men**, *woman* – **women**. But: ***Germans, Normans, Romans***.

2. *foot* – **feet**, *goose* – **geese**, *tooth* – **teeth**.

3. *mouse* – **mice**, *louse* – **lice**, *die* – **dice**.

4. “-en”: *ox* – **oxen**, *child* – **children**, *brother* – **brethren**.

5. “-f” (“-fe”) **change into -ves**:

calf – **calves**, *leaf* – **leaves**, *sheaf* – **sheaves (чон)**, *elf* – **elves**, *life* – **lives**, *thief* – **thieves**, *half* – **halves**, *loaf* – **loaves**, *wife* – **wives**, *knife* – **knives**, *self* – **selves**, *shelf* – **shelves**, *wolf* – **wolves**.

“-f” doesn’t change in:

roof – **roofs**, cliff – **cliffs**, gulf – **gulfs**, handkerchief – **handkerchiefs**, proof – **proofs**, belief – **beliefs**, safe – **safes**, grief – **griefs**, cuff – **cuffs**, chief – **chiefs**, kerchief – **kerchiefs**, chef – **chefs**.

Both ways: scarf – **scarfs (scarves)**, wharf – **wharfs (wharves)** – **верфь**, dwarf – **dwarfs (dwarves)** **карлик**, hoof – **hoofs (hooves)**.

6. House [haus] – houses [hauziz].

7. Singular = plural:

a) deer, sheep, swine; grouse (куропатка), quail (перепелка); squid (приманка), carp, cod, mackerel, pike, plaice, salmon, trout, turbot; a fish – 2 fish (fishes – сорта рыб), a fruit – 2 fruit (fruits – сорта фруктов).

b) craft, aircraft, hovercraft, counsel (адвокат), quid (slang for 1 pound sterling), dozen, score, hundred, thousand, million; Swiss, Japanese, Chinese, Portuguese.

c) barracks, crossroads, corps, gallows, headquarters, means, series, species, summons, works.

8. Some nouns have double plurals used with some difference of meaning:

brother: brothers (sons of one mother), brethren (members of one community);

cloth: cloths (kind of cloth), clothes (articles of dress);

die: dies (metal stamps for making money), dice (cubes used in games);

penny: pennies (number of coins), pence (amount of pennies in value).

9. Sometimes there are two plural forms with different meanings:

index: indices (a mathematical term), indexes (lists of contents of books);

genius: genii (supernatural beings), geniuses (extraordinarily intelligent persons);

formula: formulas (forms of words), formulae (mathematical terms);

medium: mediums (people claiming communication with spirits), media (means, agencies);

cherub: cherubim (angels); cherubs (chubby children).

10. Latin and Greek plurals:

agendum	agenda
curriculum	curricula
datum	data
erratum	errata
medium	media
memorandum	memoranda
bacillus	bacilli
focus	foci
fungus	fungi
genius	genii
nucleus	nuclei
radius	radii
stimulus	stimuli
terminus	termini
genus	genera
opus	opera
axis	axes
basis	bases
crisis	crises
hypothesis	hypotheses
oasis	oases
diagnosis	diagnoses
analysis	analyses
synthesis	syntheses
thesis	theses
appendix	appendices
index	indices
formula	formulae

<i>larva</i>	<i>larvae</i>
<i>automaton</i>	<i>automata</i>
<i>criterion</i>	<i>criteria</i>
<i>phenomenon</i>	<i>phenomena</i>
<i>series</i>	<i>series</i>
<i>species</i>	<i>species</i>

11. Foreign plurals of non-classical origin:

Beau [bou]	<i>Beaux [bouz]</i>
<i>bureau</i>	<i>bureaux</i>
<i>chateau</i>	<i>chateaux</i>
<i>plateau</i>	<i>plateaux</i>
<i>corps</i>	<i>corps</i>
<i>bandit</i>	<i>banditti</i>
<i>dilettante</i>	<i>dilettanti</i>
<i>virtuoso</i>	<i>virtuosi</i>
<i>cherub</i>	<i>cherubim</i>
<i>seraph</i>	<i>seraphim</i>

Words that are much used tend to take on the usual English plural in **-s**: *curriculum*s, *gymnasium*s, *memorandum*s, *focus*s, *fungus*s, *terminus*s, *larva*s, *appendix*s, *criterion*s, *phenomenon*s, *bureau*s, *bandit*s, *virtuoso*s, *seraph*s, etc.

Many foreign words have now become completely naturalized and always take the English plural: *album*s, *area*s, *arena*s, *asylum*s, *bonus*s, *chorus*s, *chrysanthemum*s, *circus*s, *era*s, *museum*s, *peninsula*s, *prospectus*s, *sonata*s, *solos*, *umbrella*s, *villa*s, etc.

12. Plurals with different meanings:

colours:

- (1) hues
- (2) flag (of a ship), regimental flag

compasses:

- (1) instruments with a needle that points North, South, East or West
- (2) instrument for drawing circles

customs:

- (1) habits
- (2) import duties; department of government (the Customs) that collects such duties

draughts:

- (1) currents of air (drafts)
- (2) a game
- (3) depth of ship, below the water's surface (осадка)
- (4) quantities of liquid drunk in one continuous action (глоток)

dominoes:

- (1) kinds of masks
- (2) a game

effects:

- (1) results
- (2) goods, personal property

forces:

- (1) powers (the forces of nature)
- (2) organized bodies of men (armed forces, police forces)

glasses:

- (1) vessels for drinking from
- (2) spectacles, binoculars

grounds:

- (1) land, gardens round a building, often enclosed with walls or fences
- (2) reasons for doing, saying or believing something
- (3) dregs (coffee grounds)

letters:

- (1) signs of the alphabet
- (2) communications by post
- (3) literature
- (4) learning (a man of letters)

manners:

- (1) habits and customs
- (2) social behaviour (good/bad manners)

minutes:

- (1) spaces of time
- (2) summary, records of what is said and decided at a meeting

pains:

- (1) sufferings
- (2) care, trouble, effort (to take pains with something)

premises:

- (1) statements on which reasoning is based
- (2) house or building with its outbuildings, land, etc. (владения)
- (3) details of property, names of persons, etc. in the first part of a legal agreement

quarters:

- (1) fourth parts
- (2) lodgings

returns:

- (1) recurrences (*Many happy returns of the day!*)
- (2) statistical details (returns of income for tax purposes)
- (3) profit from an investment or undertaking (small profits and quick returns)

spectacles:

- (1) sights, things seen
- (2) glasses to aid sight

spirits:

- (1) souls
- (2) strong alcoholic drinks (e. g. whisky, brandy, gin, rum)
- (3) state of mind (as being happy, hopeful, etc. or the opposite: in high/poor/low spirits, out of spirits)

The Gender of Nouns

The Gender (**masculine, feminine, neuter**) is meant in context and is expressed:

1. for animate nouns by pronouns:
e. g. **She** is a good dancer. **He** likes sports.

2. for animals, the pronoun “it” is used as a rule. Anyway, the pronouns “he” or “she” are used if it’s necessary to emphasize the biological characteristics:

e. g. I am looking at my cat. She is pretty.

3. inanimate nouns are substituted by the pronoun “it”:

e. g. I see a table. It is nice.

Some nouns have both feminine and masculine genders.

Note that the only cases in which the masculine is formed from the feminine are *bridegroom* (from *bride*) and *widower* (from *widow*).

I. Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
actor	actress	marquis/ marquess	marchioness
author	authoress	master	mistress
baron	baroness	mayor	mayoress
beau[bou]	belle[bel]	murderer	murderess
bridegroom	bride	Negro	Negress
conductor	conductress	patron	patroness
count	countess	poet	poetess
czar/tsar	czarina/tsarina	priest	priestess
duke	duchess	prince	princess
emperor	empress	prosecutor	prosecutrix
executor	executrix	shepherd	shepherdess
giant	giantess	sultan	sultana
god	goddess	testator	testatrix
heir	heiress	tiger	tigress
hero	heroine	viscount	viscountess
host	hostess	waiter	waitress
lion	lioness	warder	wardress
manager	manageress	widower	widow
II.			
bachelor	spinster	gander	goose
boar (pig)	sow	gentleman	lady
boy	girl	lord	lady
brother	sister	stallion	mare
buck	doe	husband	wife
bull	cow	king	queen
bullock	heifer	man	woman
cock	hen	nephew	niece
colt	filly	ram	ewe[ju:]
dog	bitch	sir	madam
drake	duck	stag	hind/doe
drone	bee	son	daughter
earl	countess	tutor	governess
father	mother	uncle	aunt
fox	vixen	wizard	witch or (good) fairy etc.
friar	nun		
III.			
boy cousin	girl cousin	jack-ass	jenny-ass
boyfriend	girlfriend	landlord	landlady
cock sparrow	hen sparrow	male-elephant	female-elephant
peacock	peahen	man-child	girl-child
he-bear	she-bear	man-friend	woman-friend
he-goat	she-goat	man-servant	maid-servant

billy-goat	nanny-goat	tom-cat	tabby-cat
he-wolf	she-wolf		
IY.			Common
boar	sow		pig
boy	girl		child
son	daughter		children
cock	hen		bird, fowl, poultry
father	mother		parent
king	queen		monarch, sovereign
man	woman		person, human being
ram	ewe		sheep
schoolmaster	schoolmistress		teacher
stallion	mare		horse

The Case of Nouns

(the common case, the possessive (genitive) case)

The Formation of the Possessive Case

's	'	'(s) [iz]
1. Nouns in the singular form: <i>the girl's uncle, Tess's toys, the waitress's [iz] uniform.</i> 2. Irregular plurals: <i>men's department, children's toys, women's clothes.</i> 3. Indefinite and negative pronounsreplacing nouns: <i>nobody's business, everybody's concern, someone else's benefit.</i> 4. Some combinations with pronouns: <i>somebody else's house, each other's cars.</i> 5. The noun on its own: <i>at their aunt's, at the Kennedys', St. Paul's; at the doctor's; at the fishmonger's.</i> 6. Compound nouns: <i>the editor-in-chief's office, a passer-by's remark</i> <i>(passers-by's remarks) – plural</i>	1. Regular plural nouns: <i>girls' uncles.</i> 2. Some Greek names: <i>Euripides' plays, Jesus' words, Socrates' thoughts.</i>	1. Names ending in "s": <i>Burns' [iz] verses = Burns's [iz] verses; Dickens' [iz] novels = Dickens's [iz] novels</i>

Pronunciation of "S"

1. [z] – after vowels and voiced consonants (*the dog's kennel, a day's leave*);
2. [s] – after voiceless consonants (*a cat's paw*);
3. [iz] – after sibilants (*Tess's misfortunes*).

The possessive case can be formed using prepositions:

In: *the pupils in the class;*

Of: *the books of the teachers;*

From: *the doctors from the hospital.*

's or -s' can be used with:

- **animate nouns:** *Jim's disc;*
- **higher animals:** *the lion's cage, the dog's barking;*
- **names of continents, countries, towns, organizations locative nouns:** *Europe's future, London's water supply, the company's production, the Geographical Society's gold medal;*
- **collective nouns:** *the party's platform, the government's policy;*
- **such words as:** *sun, earth, life, ocean, boat, country (the sun's rays);*
- **activity expressions:** *doctor's job, teacher's pen;*
- **time expressions:** *fifteen minutes' break, two years' voyage (But: a fifteen-minute walk);*
- **distance expressions:** *a mile's distance;*
- **cost expressions:** *100 dollars' dress;*
- **adverbs:** *tomorrow's dreams, today's newspaper;*
- **when the noun is missing:** *Mother came from the butcher's (shop). He is at the doctor's (surgery). At his uncle's (house).*
- **with some inanimate nouns in set expressions:** *in one's mind's eye (держу ухо востро), a pin's head, to one's heart's content, at one's finger's end, for goodness' sake, at one's wit's end, out of harm's way, a needle's point, a needle's eye, for Heaven's sake.*

The Possessive case with “of ” can be used with:

- a) **inanimate nouns (names of objects):** *the covering of the table;*
- b) **proper nouns:** *the father of Nick and Mike;*
- c) **nouns that indicate names of persons:** *the books of this novelist;*
- d) **names of small animals:** *the tail of the mouse;*
- e) **the double Genitive:** *a friend of my grandfather's.*

The Classifying (descriptive) Genitive

In some cases 's loses the meaning of possession and comes to denote a **quality**:
man's blood, woman's work, idiot's smile, angel's eyes, sheep's eyes, a doctor's degree (=a doctoral degree).

In some cases such combinations have become **set phrases**:

a spider's web, a doll's face, a cat's paw (слепое орудие в чьих-то руках), a fool's errand, a giant's task, the serpent's tooth, the bee's sting.

The classifying genitive is generally not replaced by an **of-phrase**, except for the genitive indicating time and distance:

two miles' distance = a distance of two miles

three days' trip = a trip of three days.

Subject-Predicate Agreement

I. Subject + a singular predicate

1. Everyone, everybody, everything, someone, somebody, something, anyone, anybody, anything, no one, nobody, nothing, etc.

- Everyone of us **is** present. Everybody **knows** him, don't they? No one (nobody) **has given** me a free ticket for anything. Either day **is** OK. Either bank of the Svisloch **is** planted with trees.
2. Each, every.
Every room **has** its own bathroom. Each child **was** given a sweet. Each student and a teacher **has** a computer.
 3. A singular subject + phrases: together with, in addition to, along with, as well as, except + a singular or a plural noun.
Mr. Smith (together with, in addition to, along with, as well as, except) his two children **is** leaving soon. **The manager** as well as (rather than, as much as, more than) the members of the board **is** responsible for the present situation.
 4. The formal subject “**it**” + a plural noun.
It **was** the dogs which awakened him. It **is** his grades that worry him. It **is** they who are responsible for the delay.
 5. A great deal of, a large amount of + uncountable noun.
A great deal of information **was** useful. A large amount of work **has** been left undone.
 6. One of + a plural noun.
“Christina’s world” **is** one of the pictures that **has** been chosen for the exhibition.
One of the photos **is** missing.
 7. More than + a singular noun.
More than one person **disagrees**.
 8. News, politics (политика).
The news from the Middle East **is** encouraging. Politics **is** popular at the university.
 9. Sports: athletics, billiards, darts, gymnastics, draughts, chess.
Billiards **is** my favourite game.
 10. Names of diseases: diabetes, measles, rabies, rickets.
Measles **is** an infectious disease.
 11. Names of sciences and some other abstract nouns: economics, civics, acoustics, ethics, linguistics, mathematics, physics, statistics, tactics, politics, ceramics.
Physics **is** a difficult subject.
But: Your mathematics **are** wrong (вычисления). Statistics on this subject **are** available (figures).
Tactics **is** (the art of arranging military forces for battle). Tactics **are** (methods).
Politics **is** (a profession). Politics **are** (political ideas).
Ceramics **is** (the art of making bricks, pots). Ceramics **are** (articles produced in this way).
 12. Advice, applause, concern, fruit, baggage, furniture, hair, information, jewelry, knowledge, luggage, machinery, money, permission, progress, rubbish, research, shopping, traffic, work, weather (uncountable nouns).
– Where **is** the money? – It **is** on the table. This **is** fruit. Your advice **is** always helpful.
 13. Subjects, expressed by nouns, denoting measure, weight, time, etc.
Two per cent **is** enough. 60 miles an hour **isn't** slow! The 50 pounds he gave me **was** soon spent. Another 5 minutes **goes** by.
But: Seventy billion cups of tea **are** drunk in Britain every year. The 3 years between 1991 and 1994 **were** the hardest for the State. 3500 litres of water **are** used by the average British family every week.
 14. Geographic names, magazines, newspapers, clubs, societies, organizations.
The New York Times **is** a good newspaper. The United States **is** a large country.
But: Names of mountain chains and groups of islands:
The Seychelles **do** not produce oil. The Balkans **are** composed of sedimentary strata.

15. Infinitives and -ing forms.
*To know everything **is** to know nothing. To be loved and to be wanted **is** always good. Seeing **is** believing.*
16. A clause introduced by a conjunction or conjunctive adverb.
*Whether you find him or not **does not** concern me.*
17. The group “**many a**” + noun.
*Many a man **has** done it. (Ни один человек проделал такое. Многие...)*
18. Singular forms of the following nouns.
A series, a species, a means, a barracks, a gallows, a crossroads, a works, a summons, a corps, a headquarters.
*That species of spiders **is** commonly seen in deserts of north Africa. Those species **are** rare.*
19. When one object is meant.
*Bacon and eggs **makes** a traditional English breakfast. (One dish is meant).*
*The painter and decorator **is** here. (One person is meant).*

II. Subject + a plural predicate

1. With homogeneous subjects connected by **and**, **both... and**.
*A red Honda and a blue Ford **are** parked outside. Both a tiger and an elephant **are** in the Zoo.*
*But: Each cat and dog **is** vaccinated. Every child in the word **loves** the story of Cinderella.*
2. Several, many, both, few, a few.
*Both **are** going to attend the University. Only a few **have** passed the exams.*
3. A group of, a couple of.
*There **are** a couple of children there.*
4. One or two (one after another).
*There **are** one or two things you should remember. The students one after another **are** flooding into the assembly hall.*
5. Articles of dress, tools and instruments, consisting of 2 parts:
*Jeans, pants, pyjamas, shorts, tights, trousers, scissors, glasses, spectacles, tongs, pincers, scales, fetters, binoculars. (These trousers **are** worn and torn. Where **are** my sunglasses.)*
6. The cattle, the vermin, the military, the police, people, poultry.
*The police **are** still looking for the missing boy. The cattle **have** stopped grazing.*
7. Arms, belongings, clothes, credentials, contents, congratulations, goods, funds, foundations, earnings, manners, memories, oats, particulars (детали, подробности), proceedings, premises, remains, riches, stairs, savings, supplies, soap-suds, surroundings, thanks, troops, wages, whereabouts, winnings.
*The goods **have** been sent to you direct from the factories. All his belongings **are** placed in the suitcase.*
8. Music groups in plural.
*The Beatles **were** perhaps the most well-known group in the 1960s.*
9. A plural subject + phrases: together with, in addition to, along with, as well as, except, rather than, as much as, more than.
*My parents as well as my sister **are** teachers.*
10. Plural nouns: 2 sheep, 2 deer, 2 swine, 2 fish, 2 grouse, 2 quail, 2 air(craft), 2 counsel, 2 (s) quid, 2 carp, 2 cod, 2 mackerel, 2 plaice, 2 salmon, 2 trout, 2 turbot.
*There **are** 2 fish (salmon, trout) in my basket. Those deer **are** old. (That deer **is** young).*

III. Subject+ a singular or plural predicate

1. There/here is + a singular noun or an uncountable noun.
*There **is** a woman outside to see you. There **is** no time left. Here **is** your bag.*
There/here are + a plural noun.
*There **are** no problems with the child. Here **are** the results of your experiment.*
There is + homogeneous subjects (the first subject is singular).
*There **is** some cheese and a few apples on the table.*
There are + homogeneous subjects (the first subject is plural).
*There **are** some chairs and a table in the room.*
2. A number of + plural noun + are: ***A number** of students **were** missing from the lecture.*
The number of + plural noun + is: ***The number** of European students at the University **is** small.*
3. Majority (minority) + a singular predicate: *The majority **believes**.*
Majority (minority) + plural nouns+ plural predicate: *The majority of doctors **believe**.*
4. Half of/ most of/ the rest of+ a singular or uncountable noun + a singular predicate.
*Half (most, the rest) of the book **has** been destroyed. Half (most, the rest) of the money **has** been stolen. About 10 per cent of the forest **is** destroyed each year.*
Half of/ most of/ the rest of + a plural noun + a plural predicate:
*Half (most, the rest) of the books **have** been destroyed. About 50 per cent of the houses **need** repairs.*
5. A lot of, plenty of, some of + a plural noun + a plural predicate:
*A lot of people **travel** for pleasure.*
6. All (of the) + an uncountable noun + a singular predicate.
*All the furniture **was** destroyed by fire.*
All (of the) + a plural countable noun + a plural predicate.
*All the guests **were** nicely dressed.*
7. None of the + an uncountable noun + a singular predicate.
*None of the stolen money **has** been found.*
None of the + a plural countable noun + a plural predicate.
*None of my friends **is** interested (formal). None of my friends **are** interested (informal).*
8. No + a singular noun or uncountable noun + a singular predicate.
*No cigarette **is** completely harmless. No chocolate **was** given to a child.*
No + a plural noun + a plural predicate.
*No tourists ever **come** to this village.*
9. Neither of, either of, any of + a plural noun + a singular or a plural predicate. A singular predicate is more preferable in writing.
*I don't think any of the people **know** (**knows**) were the money is hidden.*
*Neither of the French athletes **has** (**have**) won this year.*
Either (neither) + is; neither (either) + a singular noun + is:
*I have 2 cars. Neither (car) **is** in good condition. Either (car) **is** in good condition.*
10. With homogeneous subjects connected by “neither... nor”, “either... or”, “or”, “not only... but”, “also” the predicate agrees with the nearest noun- subject.
*Neither the students nor the teacher **is** allowed to smoke here.*
*Either the teacher or the students **are** supposed to finish this work.*
*Either my sister or my parents **are** at home. Either my parents or my sister **is** at home.*

11. **Collective nouns:** *association, audience, band, class, club, college, congress, committee, crowd, company, department, government, jury, orchestra, population, press, public, school, staff (персонал), team, university* + **a singular predicate** when they denote a single undivided body.

*The class **has its** final test on Friday. The school **is** to close next year. The crowd **was** enormous.*

But when they denote a group of separate individuals + **a plural predicate**.

*The class **are** working on their individual projects. The jury **are** in their seats. The committee usually **raise their** hands to vote. Some 80 % of the electorate **are (is)** expected to vote. The crowd **were** silent.*

12. % + of + **a singular noun** + **is**: *10 % of the **forest is** damaged.*

% + of + **a plural noun** + **are**: *10 % of **forests are** damaged.*

“It” or “there”

“It” as a formal subject

1. **To focus on an adjective:** *It is useful to know how to use a computer.*
2. **To talk about the weather:** *It has been sunny all week.*
3. **To tell the time:** *It has just gone six o'clock.*
4. **To introduce an action:** *It is going to rain. It is going to take 4 hours to get there.*
5. **To describe a place:** *It was calm and beautiful up in the mountains.
It's a beach miles away from anywhere.*
6. **To comment on a fact:** *It was surprising that so few people came to the show.*

There

1. **To say that sth exists:** *There are some very good films on this week.*
2. **To mention the presence of sth:** *I think **there's** somebody in the living room.*
3. **To say sth has happened or will happen:** *There's been an accident at the crossroads.*
4. **With modal verbs to express possibility and probability:** *There may be life on other planets.*
5. **With “seems” and “appears”:** *There seems to be a bit of problem.*
6. **To explain a problem:** *There seems to be a traffic jam further up the road.*

THE ARTICLE

The Definite Article (the)

1. Указание на объект.
2. Ссылка на известный объект.
3. Включение объекта в число известных: *The instructions are inside.*
4. Способ дополнительной конкретизации: *Show me the black ones, please!*
5. Способ родовой характеристики объекта.

Limiting attributes and situations (the)	But
<p>The unique nouns: the sun, the moon, the earth, the present, the past, the future, the post, the press, the police, the telegraph, the radio, the telephone, the Internet, the E-mail, the sky, the atmosphere, the horizon, the equator, etc.</p> <p>The objects that surround the speaker: the window, the corner, the table; the street, the trees, the birds, etc.</p> <p>The objects that are usually found in a particular place: the waiter, the postman, the doctor, the attendant. <i>He took her by the arm (by the sleeve) He was wounded in the leg.</i></p> <p>Grammar notions: the Verb, the Article, the Present Continuous Tense, the Subject, the Predicate, the noun "story", the figure "10", the letter "e", etc.</p> <p>Ordinal numerals: the first, the second, the third, the fifth, the eighth, the ninth, the twelfth, etc.</p>	<p>space (Вселенная); Mars, Venus, Pluto (planets); Congress, Parliament; TV.</p>
<p>The superlative degree of comparison (adjectives): the best, the cleverest, the most beautiful, the latest, the last, etc.</p>	<p>an object, an attribute, an adverbial modifier</p> <p><i>Suddenly he heard a shot, then <u>a second</u> and then <u>a third</u> (еще один). a first night – премьеры</i></p>
<p>Limiting attributes: the same, the only, the very, the last, the coming, the next, the following, the central, the main, the principal, the wrong, the right, the left, the former, the latter, etc.</p>	<p>a most interesting book (чрезвычайно); a best suit – выходной костюм; a bestseller; most + noun;</p> <p>last month, next week <i>She is an only child in the family</i> (единственный ребенок). <i>Hers was a right answer</i> (единственно верным). <i>A similar mistake...</i></p>

<p>Limiting of-phrase: the England of the Middle Ages, the Moscow of 1941, the University of London, the smoothness of a new machine, the monitor of the group, the (a) leg of the table, the (a) wheel of the car, one of the, any of the, the first of the, some of the, each of the, many of the, most of the, none of the, all of the, several of the, the majority of the, etc.</p> <p>Nouns with two prepositions: on the initiative of, by the side of, on the invitation of, under the influence of, under the pretence of, on the ground that, for the reason that, etc. (<i>Translated from the German into <u>Russian</u>. What is the French for <u>English</u> “book”?</i>)</p> <p>Limiting attributive clauses (тот самый...который): <i>This is the Mary, I've told you about. He took the cigarette that Richard offered him.</i></p> <p>The generic function of the definite article (names of animals, plants, professions and occupations, collective nouns denoting social groups, scientific terms):</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>The crocodile lives in Africa. The dog is man's best friend. The dollar is the monetary unit of the USA. The cow is a sacred animal in India.</i> <i>Swift the moments fly away, First <u>the</u> hour and then <u>the</u> day, Next <u>the</u> week, <u>the</u> month, <u>the</u> year, Go away and disappear.</i> Inventions: <i>The refrigerator has come into common use nowadays. The radio was invented by A. Popov.</i> Social groups or classes: the aristocracy, the bourgeoisie, the gentry, the proletariat, the peasantry, the clergy, the intelligentsia, the public, etc. Political parties: the Labour Party, the Conservative Party, the Liberal Party. Nationalities, representatives of political parties, religious beliefs: the Germans, the Belarusians; the Tories, the Whigs, the Liberals; the Orthodox, the Catholics, the Muslims. Substantivized adjectives: the poor, the rich, the young, the old, the blind; the unknown, the supernatural, the beautiful, the grotesque. Adjectives followed by “ones “: the pretty ones (красавицы), the little ones (дети). Some common nouns followed by proper names: the boy Dick, the girl Mary, the dog Spot, (Tom, the cat), the driver Brown, the painter Turner, the composer Britten, the widow Douglas, the witness Manning, the late President Yeltsin, etc. 	<p>Descriptive attributive clauses (такой, который..., такого рода, который...) <i>She stared at me with an expression that made me uncomfortable.</i></p> <p><i>Man conquered space. <u>Woman</u> can't live without flowers. A child knows it. A drowning man catches at a straw. (Каждый).</i></p> <p>In public.</p> <p><i>Italians are often good singers (not the whole nation is meant).</i></p> <p>judge Brown</p>
--	--

The Indefinite Article (a, an)

1. Способ причисления объекта к классу: *I am a teacher.*
2. Способ номинации: *I have a book.*
3. Способ количественной характеристики объекта: *A thousand pounds.*
4. Способ аспектизации: *a dull anger.*

Descriptive attributes and situations (a)

I. Descriptive of-phrase:

1. Quality (*a question of importance*)
2. Quantity or measure (*at a speed of 60 miles an hour, at a distance of 5 feet, a temperature of...*)
3. Composition (*a party of 12 people*)
4. Material (*a ring of gold*)
5. Content (*a bottle of milk*)
6. Age (*My son is a boy of 20*)
7. Size (*My son is a boy of middle height*)
8. Comparison (*an angel of a wife, a devil of a boy, a wild cat of a woman*)
9. Combinations (*a friend of mine, a book of my own*)

II. Countable nouns with:

<i>what a</i>	<i>quite a</i>	<i>a quite</i>	<i>It's a</i>
<i>such a</i>	<i>rather a</i>	<i>a rather</i>	<i>There is a</i>

III. A name modified by a descriptive attribute: *a frightened Mary, an angry Isabel* (a temporary state)

There will be a different Germany after the war. It was a new Russia that he found on his return.

IV. Nominative function of "a": *A bird may be known by its song. A bad workman blames his tools.*

V. Uncountable nouns with "a":

1. When modified by descriptive adjectives: *a dull anger*
2. *a certain tenderness; a peculiar tenderness; with an originality, that pleased.*
3. Set phrases: *It's a pleasure (a shame, a disgrace, a pity, etc.)!*
What a pleasure (a shame, a disgrace, a pity, etc.)!
Such a pleasure (a shame, a disgrace, a pity, etc.)!
4. In structures: *a knowledge of English, a love (dislike, hatred, dread) for music, a relief to sit down, a mercy (pity, shame, wonder) for, a help, a waste of time (money), an unhappy childhood, an after life; to have a look(a walk, a swim, a bite, a snack, a smoke, a drink)*

The Zero Article

1. Способ причисления объектов к классу (подклассу): *We are teachers.*
2. Способ номинации объектов: *I took lessons from you.*
3. Способ распределительности: *She is in hospital.*
4. Способ стяжения: *Old and young came to the meeting. She drew from the box teapot, sugarbowl, milk-jug, hot water and cake stand.*

1. Before the nouns modified by:

- possessive pronouns : *My friends, his books...*
- demonstrative pronouns: *I'd like to read this book.*
- interrogative pronouns: *What question have you discussed?*
- indefinite pronouns: *Take any book you like.*
- cardinal numerals: *page 5, bus 47, gate 2, room 37, platform 3.*

2. Sciences, subjects, sports, languages:

He studies physics and mathematics. She teaches (studies) piano. They play tennis. (But: The English language)

Mind: *To translate from the English into French. What is the Russian for English "sentence"? He reads Shakespeare in the original.*

3. Plural countable nouns, the nouns of materials and abstract nouns in general sense:

Children learn a lot from playing. Life is impossible without water and air.

4. Titles and ranks + proper names:

Colonel Brown, President Obama, Prime Minister Gordon Brown.

5. Relationships:

Father is in. Mother is out. Uncle James lives in Manchester. (Nurse, Cook)

6. Nouns school, college, bed, prison, jail, church, town, hospital, table, sea, home, work

when they express the purpose for which these objects serve (распредмечивание): *to go to school – to be a schoolboy, to be in prison – to be a prisoner, to be in bed – to sleep, to be at table – to eat.*

7. Most + noun:

Most children go to school at 6.

8. In set expressions:

for ages, at first sight, at home, to go home, by chance, by heart, from memory, by name, by mistake, by bus (train, plain), in (on) time, on foot, on horseback, on deck, on board a ship.

9. Compound prepositions:

in addition to, in charge of, in contrast with, in regard to, in support of, in reply to, in connection with, on account of, in comparison with, in conformity with, in honour of, in memory of, in pursuit of, in favour of, in combination with, in answer to, in defiance of, with regard to, in recognition of, in return for, in place of, in relation to, in search of, by reason of, by way of, etc.

10. Compound conjunctions:

for fear that (for fear of falling), on condition that.

11. Expressions:

next door; last time (week, month), next time (year, spring, day) – counting from the moment of speaking.

12. Proper nouns in possessive case: *This man is Ann's father.*

13. Address: *Students, hand in your tests!*

World Geography

Names	the	–
1. Space	The Universe, the cosmos, the sun, the moon, the world, the globe, the earth, the Milky Way, (the planet Mars, the Red Planet), the Greater Bear, the Lesser Bear	Space; Mars, Venus, Pluto (planets)
2. Continents		(Northern) Europe, South-East Africa, Asia Minor

3. Cardinal points	The East, the West, the South, the North	East or West home is best. From East to West, from North to South
4. Territories	The Arctic, the Antarctic, the North Pole, the South Pole, the Highlands, the Lowlands, the Lake District, the Middle East, the Far East, the Cape of Good Hope, the Bermuda Triangle, the Sherwood Forest	
5. Countries, states and counties	1. Countries, whose name contains a common noun like <i>republic, state, union</i> , etc.: the Republic of Belarus, the Russian Federation, the United Arab Emirates, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland, the People's Republic of China. 2. Abbreviations: the USA, the USSR, the FRG. 3. The Netherlands, the Vatican, the Lebanon, the Congo, the Cameroon, the Senegal, the Sudan, the Argentine (but: Argentina)	Great Britain, China, India, Texas, Kashmir, Sussex, Yorkshire, Norfolk, Suffolk
6. Provinces	The Crimea, the Caucasus, the Costa Bravo, the Prado, the Riviera, the Soar, the Transvaal, the Tyrol, the Ruhr	
7. Oceans, seas, straits, gulfs, canals, channels, rivers lakes	The Pacific (ocean), the Mediterranean (sea), the Strait of Dover, the Persian Gulf, the Gulf of Mexico, the English Channel, the Panama Canal, the (river) Thames, the Nile, the Ontario, the Michigan.	1. <u>L</u> ake Superior, <u>l</u> ake Ohio, <u>L</u> och Ness (but: the Lake of Geneva) 2. Waterfalls: <u>S</u> wallow Falls, <u>N</u> iagara Falls 3. Bay: <u>G</u> reen Bay, <u>H</u> udson Bay (but: the Bay of Biscay)
8. Peninsulas	The Hindustan Peninsula, the Balkan Peninsula	Hindustan, Kamchatka
9. Deserts	The Sahara, the Gobi, the Kara-Kum	
10. Mountains	The Alps, the Urals, the Rocky Mountains	Everest, Snowdon, Ben Nevis
11. Islands	The British Isles, the Bermudas, the Hebrides	Great Britain, Madagascar
12. Mountain passes	The Pankiy Pass, the Saint Gotthard Pass	

Town Geography

Names	the	—
1. Cities, towns, villages	The Hague The Village of Grasmere	London, Minsk, Grasmere
2. Streets, squares	The High Street, the Strand, the Mall The A-4 motorway	Whitehall, Downing street, Trafalgar Square, Fifth Avenue, Sixty-Sixth Street

Names	the	—
3. Public institutions	<p>Museums: the Tate, the British Museum, the Louvre, the Hermitage, the Kremlin, the Yanka Kupala Museum.</p> <p>Theatres, cinemas: the Globe, the Bolshoi Theatre, the Odeon</p> <p>Halls: the Albert Hall, the Carnegie Hall, the Victoria Hall</p> <p>Hotels: the Ritz, the Savoy, the Plaza</p> <p>Restaurants, cafes, pubs: the Big Bite, the Lion</p> <p>Banks: the Bank of New-York</p> <p>Schools, colleges, universities: the Sorbonne, the University of London.</p>	<p>Covent Garden, Grand Opera</p> <p>Brown's Maxim's Lloyd's Bank (Lloyds) Oxford (Cambridge) University, Carnegie College; Winchester, Eaton, Harrow, Rugby</p>
4. Airports, stations		Heathrow Airport, Vnukovo, Victoria Station
5. Bridges	The Bridge of Sighs, the Brooklyn Bridge, the Golden Gate Bridge, the Severn Bridge	Tower Bridge, Waterloo Bridge
6. State institutions, organizations, political parties	The Senate, the Cabinet, the Supreme Court, the State Duma, the National Assembly The United Nations Organization (the UNO) The Democratic Party, the Labour Party	Parliament, Congress But: NATO, SEATO
7. Unique buildings and monuments	The Pentagon, the White House, the Old Bailey, the Tower (of London), the Royal Exchange, the Stock Exchange, the Taj-Mahal; The Bronze Horseman, the Sphinx (but: Stonehenge)	Buckingham Palace, Windsor Castle, Westminster Abbey, Scotland Yard
8. Churches		Saint Paul's Cathedral
9. Parks, zoos	The Gorky Park, the Tiergarten	Hyde Park, Regent's Park, London Zoo
10. Ships, trains	The Titanic, the Queen Elizabeth II, the Magnolia; the Oriental Express, the 6 o'clock train	
11. Spacecrafts		Apollo, Challenger, Shuttle
12. Historical events and periods	The Norman Conquest, the French Revolution, the Second World War, the Gulf War; The Renaissance, the Elizabethan Age, the Victorian Age, the Middle Ages.	World War I World War II
13. Newspapers	The Financial Times, the Times, the Guardian, the Washington Post, the Canadian Tribune	"Today"

Names	the	—
14. Magazines	The Lancet	Newsweek, Time, Vogue, Playboy, Cosmopolitan.
15. Sport events	The Olympic Games, the World Cup, the Super Bowl	Wimbledon
16. Parts of towns	The City, the West End, the East End, the Soho, the Bronx	Westminster
17. Music groups	The Beatles, the Rolling Stones, the Spice Girls (when they have plural form)	Queen, ABBA, Gorky Park

The Use of Articles with Nouns Used Predicatively

a	the	—
<p>Nominating function:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>He is a doctor.</i> <i>It's a very long busy street.</i> <i>She was engaged as (a) governess.</i> 	<p>Individualizing function:</p> <p><i>She was the daughter of a general.</i></p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>They are doctors.</i> With nouns denoting a position, rank, state, post or occupation which is unique after the verbs to elect, to appoint, to choose, to make: <i>He was elected _President of the USA.</i> In set phrases: <i>He was taken _prisoner.</i> <i>He was called _names.</i> <i>They called him _names.</i> <i>She was engaged as (a) governess.</i>

The Use of Articles With Nouns in Apposition (приложение)

a	the	—
<p><i>Paul Long, <u>a</u> neighbour of yours, will be visiting us this evening. I've got acquainted with Mr. Smith, <u>an</u> architect.</i> (a classifying function) (We don't know anything about the person and require some new knowledge about him.)</p>	<p><i>"Hamlet", <u>the</u> tragedy of Shakespeare, has been screened many times. I want to speak to Mr. Smith, <u>the</u> electrician.</i> (The listener is supposed to be familiar with the person.)</p>	<p><i>Mr. Johnson, <u>_</u>Superintendent of the School, received me in his office.</i>(a unique post)</p>

The Use of Articles with Some Semantic Groups of Nouns

The nouns	–	the	a
<p>Parts of the day: dawn, morning, sunrise, daytime, day, noon, afternoon, night, dusk, sunset, evening, nightfall, twilight, midnight, etc.</p>	<p>1. After prepositions: at, by, about, past, before, after, towards, till, until, etc: (<i>at dawn, by day, by night, after sunset</i>)</p> <p>2. Morning, day, dawn + to break, to be at hand: <i>Dawn was breaking when we set out.</i></p> <p>3. Evening, night, dusk + to fall, to gather, to set in, to be at hand, to come: <i>Dusk fell early.</i></p> <p>4. _Friday evening, _Saturday night: <i>We met on Saturday night (в прошлую субботу)</i></p> <p>5. Tomorrow morning, yesterday afternoon.</p> <p>6. All day (long), all night through, day after day, night after night, day in day out, from morning till night, (to work) day and night.</p> <p>7. When modified by: early, broad, high, late, real: <i>It was _early morning.</i> <i>It was _broad day.</i> <i>It was _high noon.</i></p>	<p>1. In the morning, in the afternoon, in the night;</p> <p>2. all through the night, all through the day; in the dead of night.</p> <p>3. When a particular part of the day is meant: <i>The weather was very cold on the day of his arrival.</i></p> <p>4. Generically: <i>He used to spend the morning lying about the beach.</i></p>	<p>– When modified by a descriptive attribute: <i>It was a fine, warm night.</i> <i>We met on a Saturday night.</i> <i>(Мы встретились однажды суббота-ним вечером.)</i></p>
<p>Seasons: spring, summer, autumn (fall), winter</p>	<p>1. As a predicative: <i>It was _summer.</i></p> <p>2. <i>It was _late (early) spring.</i></p> <p>3. <i>To work winter and summer.</i></p> <p>4. <i>Indian summer (бабье лето).</i></p>	<p>1. When a particular season is meant: <i>The winter of 1941 was very cold.</i></p> <p>2. In generic function: <i>The sun in (the) summer warms the skin.</i></p>	<p>1. When modified by a descriptive attribute: <i>“It has been a terrible summer,” he said.</i></p>

<p>Meals: breakfast, lunch(eon), dinner, supper, (high) tea.</p>	<p>1. Usually without any article: <i>Dinner was ready. John came to lunch at the appointed time. "Stay to tea," said Mrs. Watson.</i></p> <p>2. With <i>late, early</i>. <i>They had _ late breakfast.</i></p>	<p>1. In a clear case of back reference or with a limiting attribute: <i>The dinner was excellent.</i></p>	<p>1. When modified by a descriptive attribute: <i>We sat down to a light French breakfast.</i></p> <p>2. When they denote dinner party, tea party: <i>Mr. March used to give a dinner (party) to the entire family.</i></p> <p>3. When they denote a portion: <i>He wheedled a few francs out of me for a dinner and a bed.</i></p>
<p>Diseases: cancer, chicken-pox, cholera, diarrhea, diabetes, diphtheria, influenza (flu), jaundice, lumbago, mumps, measles, pneumonia, quinsy, rabies, rickets, scarlet fever, smallpox, tuberculosis (consumption)</p>	<p>1. Generally without any article: <i>She suffered from diabetes. She fell ill with flu. There is no remedy for cancer.</i></p> <p>2. To be dizzy, to feel sick. <i>To be sick at heart – томить-ся, тосковать.</i></p>	<p>1. In a clear case of back reference or if there is a limiting attribute: <i>The mumps had not noticeably increased the fatness of his face.</i></p>	<p>1. Not special medical terms: <i>He had a sore throat. He had a toothache. She had a bruise on her leg. To have (catch) (a) cold(s).</i></p>
<p>Nouns which became uncountable in their phraseological usage: bed, school, college, university, hospital, prison/jail, sea, camp, church, court, table, town.</p>	<p><i>She is still in _bed. He would be sent to _prison if he were caught. I live in _town. She is still in _hospital.</i></p>	<p><i>The road to the prison was blocked by policemen.</i></p>	<p><i>Perhaps he was in a German prison. There is a church in our village.</i></p>

The Use of Articles with Uncountable Abstract Nouns

–	a	the
<p>1. In general sense: <i>Knowledge is power.</i> <i>Silence sometimes implies consent.</i> <i>If she could feel hunger and thirst, heat and cold, then she could feel love and love for a man.</i></p> <p>2. Nouns of verbal character: work, accommodation, advice, assistance, admiration, applause, approval, behaviour, concern, encirclement, guidance, information, knowledge, permission, progress, recognition, research, torture, trade, trouble, travel. <i>What boring work!</i></p> <p>3. Some other nouns: weather, environment, baggage, luggage, chaos, fun, furniture, fruit, jewelry, luck, machinery, money, rubbish, shopping scenery, traffic. <i>What fine weather we are having today!</i> <i>What luck! It was great fun!</i></p> <p>4. The attributes which do not bring out a special aspect: – degree (great progress); – time (ancient architecture); – nationality (English poetry); – geography (Moscow time); – authenticity (real happiness); – social characteristic (racial discrimination, religious music) <i>You are making great progress.</i></p> <p>5. In prepositional phrases of manner: <i>He looked at the boy (как? каким образом?) with curiosity.</i> <i>She kissed him with warm affection.</i> <i>They watched him in nervous silence.</i></p>	<p>1. Before descriptive attributes bringing out a special aspect: <i>A dull anger rose in his chest.</i></p> <p>2. Some nouns as predicatives after a formal subject “it” or after exclamatory “what” and “such”: <i>comfort, disappointment, disgrace, pity, pleasure, relief, shame, etc.</i> <i>What a shame (a pity)!</i> <i>Such a shame (a pity)!</i> <i>It’s a shame (a pleasure)!</i></p> <p>3. In structures: <i>a knowledge of English, a love (dislike, hatred, dread) for music, a relief to sit down, a mercy (pity, shame, wonder) for, a help, a waste of time (money), an unhappy childhood, an after life; to have a look (a walk, a swim, a bite, a snack, a drink).</i></p> <p>4. In prepositional phrases with “certain” and “peculiar” or modified by an attributive clause: <i>...with a certain tenderness;</i> <i>...with a peculiar tenderness;</i> <i>...with an originality, that pleased.</i></p> <p>5. In set phrases: <i>Stop making a fuss!</i> <i>To be in a bad (good) mood, to fly into a passion (a fury, a rage), to be at a loss, all of a sudden, etc. (p. 79)</i></p>	<p>1. When modified by a limiting attribute: <i>the strictest confidence,</i> <i>the same ease,</i> <i>the abruptness of the question.</i></p> <p>2. Substantivized adjectives denoting abstract notions: <i>the average,</i> <i>the beautiful,</i> <i>the extravagant,</i> <i>the grotesque,</i> <i>the supernatural,</i> <i>the normal,</i> <i>the regrettable,</i> <i>the unbearable,</i> <i>the ordinary,</i> <i>the unknown.</i> <i>Do you believe in the supernatural?</i></p> <p>3. When the limitation is clear from the context: <i>In the darkness we felt lost.</i></p> <p>4. In set phrases: <i>in the past (the future, the present), to tell the truth, under the impression of, under the influence of.</i> <p style="text-align: right;">(p. 79)</p></p>

–	a	the
<p>6. Uncountable abstract nouns in the function of a <u>predicative</u> even with a descriptive attribute: <i>It was <u>pure happiness</u>. It was not just <u>ordinary anxiety</u>. It was <u>righteous punishment</u>.</i></p> <p>7. In set phrases: <i>at <u>present</u>, in <u>despair</u>, in <u>trouble</u>, by <u>chance</u>, on <u>purpose</u>, etc. (p. 79)</i></p>		

Note. The use of **the indefinite article** appears to be optional – it seems to depend on the desire of the speaker to lay particular stress on **the special aspect** expressed by the attribute modifying the noun. Thus it would be correct to use the nouns in the following examples **without the article “a”** in accordance with the general rule.

*e.g. She had (a) **mature distrust** of the trivial. Their marriage had evidently been (a) **great success**. He smiled at me with (a) **grave sympathy**. We saw the distorting lines of (a) **deep and anxious weariness**.*

The Use of Articles with Names of Materials

–	a	the
<p>1. In general sense: <i><u>Iron</u> is the bread of industry; <u>nickel</u> is the meat. My heart felt as heavy as <u>lead</u>. <u>Coffee</u> without <u>bread</u> could never honestly serve as supper.</i></p> <p>2. Some/any are used when an indefinite part of the substance is meant: <i>I bought some bread and cheese.</i></p>	<p>1. Sorts of food: <i>They sell a good coffee here. (They are now giving you bad teas in the club.)</i></p> <p>2. A portion: <i>A wine for me and an ice-cream for my lady. He drank a brandy and went out. A salad and 2 coffees will do!</i></p> <p>3. An object made of a certain material: <i>a tin of sardines, a glass of water</i></p>	<p>1. When modified by a limiting attribute: <i>She looked with eager, hungry eyes at the bread and the meat and the beer that the landlady brought <u>her</u>.</i></p> <p>2. When the situation makes it definite: <i>In silence the soup was finished.</i></p>

Articles in set phrases

—	a	the
arm in arm	a great number of	all the same
ask for permission	a good deal	at the beginning (of the play)
at dawn (daybreak, dusk, noon, midnight, sunrise)	all of a sudden	at the end (of the performance)
at dinner (breakfast, lunch)	an only child	at the crossroads
at first, at heart	as a matter of fact	at the latest
at last, at first sight (at a glance)	as a result	at the moment
at home (work, school, college, sea)	as a rule	at the seaside
at peace (war)	at a distance – на некотором расстоянии	at the time
at present	at a distance of 5 miles	at the weekend
be in despair	at a speed of 60 mph	by the time
be in doubt	at a temperature of 100 C	by the way
be in hospital (bed, prison, church)	at a glance (at first sight)	do the best
be in trouble	at a flash	do the cooking (the washing up, the shopping)
be (fall) in love with	at a gulp	for the sake of
beyond recognition (understanding)	at a loss	for the time being
by accident, by chance	at a time (one) – по-одному	in (the) winter (autumn)
by heart, by mistake, by name	do sb a favour	in the morning (afternoon, evening, dusk, night, day)
by train (bus, plane, sea, land, car, air, etc.)	for a change	in the centre
by phone (radio)	fly into a passion (fury, rage)	in the dark
do research (homework, housework)	give (sb) a hand (a lift)	in the day – time
for hours, for ages, for nothing	go for a holiday	in the distance – вдали, вдалеке
for sale	go for a walk (ride)	in the doorway
from beginning to end	go on a trip (a tour, an excursion)	in the end (finally)
from east to west, from head to foot	a great many (with countables)	in the long run
from memory	a great deal (with uncountables)	in the meantime
from morning till night	have (got) an idea	in the middle
from side to side	have a bite (snack)	in the South (North, East, West)
get into trouble	have a cold (a headache, a toothache, a sore throat)	in the original
get out of bed (town)	have a good time	in the past (present, future)
(go) out of mind	have a meal	in the rain
give (get) permission	have a mind to do sth	in the shade
go home (down town)	have a rest	in the singular (plural)
go to hospital (school, college, university, prison, church, bed, sea)	have a good reputation	in the sky
hand in hand	have a shower	in the street
have breakfast (lunch, tea, supper)	have a wash	in the sun
	have a smoke	keep the house – сидеть дома
	have a ride	keep the bed – соблюдать постельный режим
	have a swim	lay the table
		make the bed

–	a	the
<p>have (great) fun have time – не спешить in case, in cash, in charge of in common, in connection with in contact with in debt, in demand, in despair in detail, in fact, in future, in haste in mind, in person, in search (of) in secret, in service, in sight, in vain, in town in spite of it's fun, it's high time keep time, keep (be) in touch keep house – вести хозяйство leave home (school) lose control (of), lose heart make fun (of) on account (of), on behalf of on foot, on horseback, on deck on board the ship, on condition (that) on fire, on hand (at hand, off hand) on holiday, on leave, on purpose on business (for pleasure) on sale (for sale), on strike on time (8.00), (in time – 7.55) out of breath, out of control out of date, out of doors out of order, out of place out of sight pay attention to play football (tennis, hockey) put in order shake hands with a sort (kind) of place (book, house, man, etc.) speak English (in English) (the textbook on English) stay (invite) for lunch (dinner) step by step study (teach) mathematics (physics, piano, ballet) take care (of), take to heart take offence, take refuge take to literature, take action without question</p>	<p>have a stroll have a walk in a bad temper in a fury in a good humour in a good (bad) mood in a hurry in a line in a low (loud, harsh) voice in a mess in a minute (moment) in a nutshell in a queue in a rush in a sense in a way in a while in a whisper in a word in a year or two It's a pity It's a pleasure It's a shame It's a waste of time (money) keep a secret keep a diary (register) make a fuss once a year once a week once a month on a diet on a bus (tram, train) put an end to take a degree in take a fancy to tell a lie to a (certain) degree to a (certain) extent to be a success What a pity! What a shame! What a pleasure! What a disgrace!</p>	<p>make the best (most) of sth most of the time on the bus on the contrary on the left (right) on the one hand on the other hand on the phone on the spot (be) on the safe side – на всякий случай on the whole out of the question over the horizon play the piano (the violin, the guitar) put the blame on run the shop (house) run the house(hold) for sb take the trouble to do sth the day after tomorrow the disabled the handicapped the homeless the needy the old the young the rich the wealthy the poor the only place the other day the sooner the better tell the time tell the truth the other (другой из двух) the other day the right route the same the right (wrong) side under the impression under the influence (of) the English language</p>

THE PRONOUN

Classification of Pronouns

1. **Personal:** The common case: I, she, he, it, we, you, they.
The objective case: me, her, him, it, us, you, them.
2. **Possessive:** Conjoint forms: my, his, her, its, our, your, their.
Absolute forms: mine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs.
3. **Reflexive:** myself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourself (yourselves), themselves.
4. **Reciprocal:** each other, one another.
5. **Demonstrative:** this (these), that (those), such, the same.
6. **Interrogative:** who, whose, what, which, whoever, whatever, whichever.
7. **Defining:** each, every, everybody, everyone, everything, all, either, both, other, another.
8. **Indefinite:** some, somebody, something, someone;
any, anybody, anything, anyone.
9. **Negative:** no, none, neither, nobody, no one, nothing.

I. Personal pronouns

The Personal pronouns have two cases:

The Common case: I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they (*I'll tell you everything.*)

The Objective case: me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them (*She looked at them.*)

II. The possessive pronouns have two forms:

Conjoint form:

My, your, his, her, its.

Our, your, their

e. g. *Is this your book? – No, this is hers.*

Absolute form:

Mine, yours, his, hers, its.

Ours, yours, theirs.

Hers was a right answer.

III. The reflexive pronouns

are formed by adding endings (at the singular – *self*, at the plural – *selves*) to personal possessive pronouns.

Myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

e. g. *Go and wash yourself. She can do it by herself.*

Emphasizing pronouns have the meaning of “alone”, and they have also “**by**”:

e. g. *This is an engine, that goes by itself.* (**But:** *on his (her) own.*)

IV. The Reciprocal Pronouns

Each other – this pronoun should be used when speaking of **two persons**.

e.g. *Tom and Mary love each other.*

One another – should be used when speaking of **more than two persons**.

e.g. *My students respect one another.*

V. The Demonstrative Pronouns

That, this, these, those, such, the same

This – these, that – those are used to point out a person or thing expressed in the sentence by the subject complement:

e.g. **This** is a tree. **Those** are trees. **This** is smaller than **that**. **These** are much better than **those**.

The former and **the latter** may also be regarded as demonstrative pronouns.

e.g. Of **these** alternatives I prefer **the former**. I prefer **the former** alternative to **the latter**.

VI. The Interrogative Pronouns

Whose, what, which, when, who

Who is your friend? **Whose** is this car? **What** are you doing?

1. **Whom** is often replaced by **who** in spoken English:

Who could you see there? **Who** are you waiting for?

2. **What** may also be applied to persons when it inquires about occupations, character:

What is he? – He is a teacher. (**What** does he do?)

3. The emphatic forms are used to express indignation, anger, etc.

What on earth are you doing? **Who** in the world is he?

4. **The relative pronouns who, which, that, whose** are used for introducing subordinate clauses.

We saw the man **who** had taught us a lot.

Who and **whom** are used for people; **which** is used for things, **that** is for people and things.

Who is the Nominative form, **whom** is the Objective form.

5. **Whose** (чей? чьи?) refers to people and things:

I saw **a girl whose** beauty took my breath away.

It was **a meeting whose** purpose I didn't understand.

6. The word **as** is also relative pronoun if it is used after **such** and **same**.

Meet me at the (same) place that (as) you did yesterday.

VII. Defining pronouns

Each, every, everybody, everyone, everything, all, either, both, other, another.

Other

1. a) **another**: – еще один, другой; не такой, иной.

If there are more than 2 objects of the same description, the indefinite article is used (**another**).

Mum, give me **another** cake. Have **another** try! = Попробуйте еще раз!

Another Shakespeare. **Another** day, **another** plan. = Что ни день, то новый план.

One way or **another**. = Так или иначе. When I came back I found him in **another mood** (в ином настроении).

b) **another + a definite number** (plural expressions of quantity):

In **another 5 years** I will move to a new flat. (Еще через 5 лет...) **Another 2 minutes** and I should have missed the train.

With uncountables and plural nouns: I want to have **some more** coffee (**some more** sweets).

We'll need **an extra 10 pounds**. I've had **a very busy 3 days**.

2. **the other**: – другой из двух (“the” is used with a singular noun if there are 2 objects of the same description):
*I have two pets at home. **One is** a dog and **the other is** a cat. **The other** glove. **The other side** of the street.*
 – **the other day** = на днях (the marker of the Past Simple).
3. **other people** = другие (in general sense). If some objects are divided into 2 groups and either one of the groups or both of them are indefinite, there is no article.
*I was thinking of **other people** in the same position.*
*Some people like coffee for their lunch, **other people** prefer tea or juice.*
4. **others**. (in general sense):
*When people do not care what **others** think of them, the most part they deceive themselves.*
5. **the other students**. (Concrete students). The definite article is used with a plural noun modified by “other” if there is a definite number of objects divided into 2 definite groups.
***The other** guests were expected. My mother needed more than **the other members** of the family. (The rest).*
6. **the others**. (concrete sense. The noun “students” is missing.)
7. **Set phrases with “other”**:
***Every other day** – через день. **The other day** – на днях. **Some time or other** – когда-нибудь. **Some idiot or other**... – Какой-то идиот.... **Every other** house in the street **was** damaged. (Половина домов на улице...)*

VIII. Indefinite and negative pronouns

1) The indefinite pronouns proper:

- some, any, no;
 - somebody, anybody, nobody; someone, anyone, no one; something, anything, nothing;
 - one, none.
- a) *some, something, someone* are used in affirmative sentences;
 b) *any, anything, anyone* – in interrogative and negative sentences;
 c) *no, nobody, nothing, no one* – in negative sentences.
*e.g. I put **something** on the table. Do you see **anyone** there? **No one** could do that work. If the verb in the negative sentence has the particle **not**, the pronouns **any**, **anybody**, etc. are used instead of the negative pronouns.*
*I don't know **anything** about her cat. I know **nothing** about her cat.*

2) The distributive pronouns:

- all, every, each, other, either, neither, both;
- everybody, everyone, everything.

Each	Every
1. For 2 or more things: <i>My wife and I each ordered avocado to start with. John and Mary love each other.</i>	1. For 3 or more things.
2. When we are thinking of things separately, one at a time (1, 1, 1, 1...): <i>Each person in turn went to see the doctor. Study each sentence carefully (one by one).</i>	2. When we are thinking of things together, in a group: <i>He gave every patient the same medicine. Every sentence must have a verb (all sentences in general).</i>

Each	Every
3. We don't use <i>each</i> with <i>almost, practically, nearly, without exception</i> , which stress the idea of a whole group.	3. <i>She's lost nearly every friend she had.</i> <i>Not every</i> train driver is on strike today.
4. Each may be followed by an of -phrase: <i>Each of the men signed his name as he came in.</i>	4. Every can't be followed by of -phrase. (Every one of...): <i>I've read every one of them.</i> <i>Every one of us will be granted a scholarship.</i>
5. <i>They received a present each.</i>	5. Every can't be used at the end of a sentence.
6. –	6. We can use every with a few uncountables: <i>My mother gave me every encouragement when I was a child.</i>
7. –	7. a) We use every to say how often something happens: <i>Every day, every 5 minutes, every Sunday, every other day.</i> b) Distance: <i>every ten metres, every 5 miles, etc.</i>
8. Each is more usual for a small number.	8. Every is more usual for a large number.
9. Each can be used alone (without a noun); <i>Each was different.</i>	9. –

Note. In many cases *each* and *every* can be used without much difference of meaning (singular):

You look more beautiful each/every time I see you.

Both (оба, и тот и другой)	Neither (ни тот, ни другой; никто, ничто)	Either (и тот и другой, каждый из двух, любой из двух, один из двух)
1. It refers to 2 objects, takes a verb in the plural. It is the opposite of neither/not either . <i>Both my parents adore classical music.</i> <i>We both – both of us, you both – both of you.</i>	1. Neither refers to 2 objects, takes a verb either in the singular or in the plural. <i>Neither of my sisters <u>is</u> married. = Neither of my sisters <u>are</u> married.</i> <i>“Can you come on <u>Monday</u> or <u>Tuesday</u>?”</i> <i>“I’m afraid neither day is possible.”</i> <i>“Would you like tea or coffee?”</i> “ Neither will do.” (“ Either will do.”) <i>I have 2 cars. Neither (car) is in good condition.</i>	1. Either refers to 2 objects and takes a verb in the singular. <i>“Would you like tea or coffee?”</i> “ Either will do.” (“ Either. I really don't mind. ”) <i>I have 2 cars. Either (car) is in good condition.</i>
2. In negative sentences neither is used instead of both if 2 objects are mentioned.	“ None of ” is used for more than 2 objects: <i>None of my friends came to the party.</i> <i>None of the trains come/comes to Oxford.</i>	2. Either (тоже, также) = too in negative sentences and in questions.

Both (оба, и тот и другой)	Neither (ни тот, ни другой; никто, ничто)	Either (и тот и другой, каждый из двух, любой из двух, один из двух)
<p><i>Neither of my parents was (were) invited there.</i></p>	<p><i>None of them come/comes in time.</i></p> <p>2. Neither can be used alone: <i>"Which one do you want?" "Neither".</i> <i>"Is your friend British or American?" "Neither. She is Australian."</i></p> <p>3. Neither and nor as adverbs mean "also not": <i>Sue didn't turn up, and nor did Kate.</i> <i>"I can't swim." "Neither can I." ("I can't either." "Me neither.")</i> <i>"I don't like milk." "Neither do I." ("I like milk." "So do I." "I can swim." "So can I.")</i></p> <p>4. Not... either: <i>"I can't swim." "Neither can I." ("I can't either." "Me neither.")</i> <i>Sue didn't turn up, and Kate didn't either.</i> <i>I don't want either of my parents to go to the party.</i></p> <p>5. Neither... nor (ни...ни) joins 2 negative ideas and is the opposite of "both...and". <i>I neither smoke nor drink.</i> <i>Neither James nor Virginia was at home. (Normal).</i> <i>Neither James nor Virginia were at home. (Less careful).</i></p> <p>6. Not... nor: <i>Our main need is not food, nor money. It is education.</i> <i>She didn't phone that day, nor the next day.</i></p>	<p><i>"I can't swim."</i> <i>"I can't either."</i> <i>John is a doctor. Mary is a doctor, too. John is not a doctor. Mary is not a doctor, either.</i></p> <p>3. Either...or (или...или): <i>Either you apologise or I'll never speak to you again.</i> <i>I'm not sure where he's from. He is either Spanish or Italian.</i></p> <p>4. Either way – так или иначе.</p>

All	None
<p>1. All refers to more than 2 objects. It is the opposite of none. It takes the verb in the plural. <i>All flowers are beautiful. (In general).</i> <i>All (of) the flowers in this garden are beautiful.</i></p> <p>2. All + that clause means "everything" and takes a singular verb. <i>All that he said was lies.</i></p>	<p>1. None refers to more than 2 objects. It is the opposite of all. None of + noun + a singular/plural verb: <i>None of them come/comes in time.</i></p> <p>2. <i>"Which film did you like more?" "None."</i> <i>"How many fish did you catch?" "None."</i> <i>"How much progress did he make?" "None."</i></p>

3) The quantitative pronouns:

much, many, little, few, a little, a few, a lot of, lots of, a great deal, a great many.

1. **Much, many, few, little.**

We use **much** and **little** with uncountable nouns: *much time, much luck; little energy, little money.*

We use **many** and **few** with plural nouns: *many friends, many people; few cars, few countries.*

2. **A lot (of), lots (of), plenty (of).**

We use **a lot of / lots of / plenty of** with uncountable and plural nouns:

a lot of luck, lots of time, plenty of money, a lot of people, lots of books, plenty of ideas.

Plenty = more than enough:

e.g. "Have some more to eat." "No, thank you. I've had **plenty**."
"There's no need to hurry. We've got **plenty of time**."

3. We use **much** and **many** mainly in **negative sentences and questions**:

e.g. *We didn't spend **much** money. Have you got **many** friends?*

In affirmative sentences it is usually better to use **a lot (of)**:

e.g. *We spent **a lot of** money* (not "we spent much money")
*There has been **a lot of** rain recently* (not "much rain")

Much and many can be used in affirmative sentences:

– **as the subject:** ***Much** was known but **little** was done. **Many** knew but **few** came.*

– **when modified by adverbs of degree (so, too, as, how):**

*It's **too much** trouble. You can have **as much** fruit **as** you want.*

– **in the function of an object:** *My mother meant **much** to me.*

4. **Little (a little), few (a few).**

Little and **few** (without **a**) are negative ideas:

e.g. *Hurry up! We've got **little** time.* (= not much, not enough time).

*He is not popular. He has **few** friends.* (= not many, not enough friends).

We also use **very little** and **very few**:

e.g. *We've got **very little** time. He has **very few** friends.*

"**A little**" and "**a few**" are more positive ideas. **A little / a few** = **some**, a small amount or a small number, but enough:

*Let's go and have a drink. We've got **a little** time before the train leaves.* (= some time, enough time to have a drink).

"Have you got any money?" – "Yes, **a little**. Do you want to borrow some?"

(**A little** = not much but enough for you to borrow some).

*I enjoy my life here. I have **a few** friends and we meet quite often.*

(**A few friends** = not many but enough to have a good time).

"When did you last see Tom?" – "**A few** days ago." (= some days, ago).

But "**only a little**" and "**only a few**" have a negative meaning:

e.g. *Hurry up! We've **only** got **a little** time.*

*The village was very small. There were **only a few** houses.*

THE ADJECTIVE

Formation

Suffixes

- able: comfortable, reliable, eatable, favourable
- ible: sensible, visible, responsible, horrible
- al: cultural, medical, practical, formal, professional, educational
- (i)an: American, Belarusian, Scandinavian, Mexican
- ant: observant, elegant, significant
- ar: polar, similar, popular
- ary: reactionary, ordinary, imaginary, documentary
- ate: passionate, considerate, literate
- ed: bored, exhausted, offended, disappointed, talented (state)
- en: wooden, golden, silken, shrunken
- ent: dependent, innocent, intelligent, different
- esque: picturesque, grotesque
- fold: manifold, twofold
- ful: careful, skilful, useful, powerful, doubtful
- ial: racial
- ic: atomic, scientific, energetic, economic, pessimistic
- id: torpid (бездеятельный, вялый), morbid (болезненный)
- ical: economical, historical
- ing: tiring, boring, exhausting, interesting (quality)
- ious: vicious (порочный), delicious, spacious, glorious
- ish: childish, brownish, foolish, selfish
- ive: active, attractive, expensive, sensitive, distinctive
- less: careless, useless, jobless, homeless
- like: manlike, businesslike, warlike
- ly: motherly, fatherly, brotherly, friendly; daily, weekly, monthly, kindly
- most: uttermost
- ory: celebratory, introductory, contradictory, observatory, satisfactory
- ous: dangerous, curious, anxious, famous, poisonous, synonymous
- ious: spacious, glorious
- some: troublesome (беспокойный), lonesome (вызывающий тоску, унылый), tiresome (надоедливый)
- tial: influential
- y: dirty, dusty, sleepy, bloody, muddy, thirsty, healthy;
stone – stony, steel – steely, silk – silky, silver – silvery, leather – leathery, glass – glassy.

Prefixes

- a-: asocial, amoral, apolitical; afloat, ablaze, alive, alike
ab-: abnormal
anti-: anticlockwise, antiwar
dis-: discontent, dissatisfied, dishonest
extra-: extraordinary
hyper-: hypersensitive
il-: illegal, illiterate (**But:** unlimited, unlegalized, unlawful, unlearned, unlent, unlet, unlit, unlike)
im-: impolite, impatient, impossible; immortal, immeasurable, impure
(but: unpopular, unpredictable, unpleasant, unpractical, unpopulated)
in-: inaccessible, incredible, indecisive, indifferent, inattentive, invisible, inexpensive, intolerant, independent, inhuman, insensitive; indoor
inter-: international
ir-: irrational, irresponsible, irrelevant, irreligious, irrelievable
(**But:** unreliable, unreasonable, unrecognizable, unrespectable, unreal)
mal-: malnourished, maladjusted (неотрегулированный)
-mis: misinformed, misleading
non-: non-violent, non-governmental, non-stop
out-: outdoor, outstanding
over-: overactive, over-cautious, overcrowded, over-confident
pre-: pre-university, pre-packed, pre-war, premarital, prehistoric
pro-: pro-industrial, prolonged
post-: post-examination, post-religious, postwar
self-: self-appointed, self-educated
sub-: subterranean, submerged, subnormal, subsonic
super-: supersonic, super-active, super-sensitive
ultra-: ultramodern
un-: unable, unemployed, unsuccessful, unpredictable, unnatural, unreasonable, unsuitable
under-: underdeveloped, undernourished, underemployed; underground, undersea.

Compound Adjectives

- heart-breaking, all-seeing, smart-looking, sharp-cutting;
- absent-minded, man-made, old-fashioned, well-built, well-known, newly-repaired, much-praised, blue-eyed, long-legged, fair-haired, down-hearted. (*The never-to-be-forgotten days*);
- colour-blind, grass-green, deaf-mute (глухонемой), duty-free (беспошлинный);
- worn-out, well-off (well-to-do people).

Compound Adjectives of Measurement

- time/distance: a ten-minute walk (But: *ten minutes' walk*)
- duration: a four-hour meeting (But: *four hours' meeting*)
- age: a three-year-old building, a seventeen-year-old student
- depth: a six-foot hole
- area: a fifty-acre farm
- length: a twelve-inch ruler

- volume: a two-liter car
- price: a fifty-dollar dress
- weight: a five-kilo bag

Classification of Adjectives

1. Intensifying adjectives:

- a) **emphasizers** (giving a general heightening effect): a clear failure, a definite loss, a true scholar, a real hero);
- b) **amplifiers** (denoting a high or extreme degree): a complete victory, the absolute truth, the entire world, utter stupidity, total nonsense);
- c) **downtoners** (having a lowering effect): a slight misunderstanding, a feeble reason.

2. Restrictive adjectives (which restrict the reference to the noun exclusively, particularly or chiefly): the exact answer, the precise information, the specific point.

3. Adjectives related to adverbial expressions: a former friend (formerly a friend), a possible opponent (possibly an opponent), the late president (till lately the president)

4. Adjectives formed from nouns: a criminal lawyer, a woolen dress.

5. The Stative (30 adjectives used only as a predicative) – denotes a temporary state of a person or a non-person:

<i>ablaze</i> (гореть)	<i>afraid</i> (испуганный)	<i>ajar</i> (неплотно закрыто)	<i>amiss</i> (ошибочно)	<i>astir</i> (в движении)
<i>adrift</i> (по течению)	<i>aghast</i> (ошеломленный)	<i>alight</i> (горящий)	<i>ashamed</i> (пристыженный)	<i>astray</i> (заблудиться)
<i>afire</i> (в огне)	<i>aglow</i> (пылать)	<i>alike</i> (похожий)	<i>askew</i> (наклонный)	<i>athirst</i> (исп. жажду)
<i>aflame</i> (в огне)	<i>agog</i> (возбужденный)	<i>alive</i> (живой)	<i>aslant</i> (поперек)	<i>awake</i> (бодрствовать)
<i>afloat</i> (на поверхности)	<i>ahead</i> (вперед)	<i>aloof</i> (отчужденно)	<i>asleep</i> (спать)	<i>aware</i> (осведомленный)
<i>afoot</i> (в движении)	<i>akin</i> (родственный)	<i>alone</i> (одиноким)	<i>aslope</i> (на склоне)	<i>awry</i> (косой, кривой)

Characteristics of Adjectives

I. Grammatically, four features are generally considered to be characteristic of adjectives:

- 1) their syntactic function of attribute;
- 2) their syntactic function of predicative;
- 3) their taking of adverbial modifiers of degree (very nice);
- 4) the degrees of comparison.

II. Adjectives (not adverbs) are used as a predicative after:

– **appear, feel, look, smell, sound, seem, taste:**

This drink tastes strange. She felt happy on the day we met. She is feeling (un)well.

– **be, become, fall, get, go, grow, lie, sit, stand, turn:**

He stood motionless. He grew impatient.

But after certain intransitive verbs we find both adjectives and adverbs:

e.g. The sun **shone brightly**. They **lay silent(ly)** on the grass. They **stood motionless(ly)**.
 Note that the verbs **look, grow** can be used both as link-verbs and as notional verbs. In the latter case they are followed by an adverb.

e.g. She looked kind and quiet. – She looked kindly at the boy.

He grew impatient. – The company's profits grew slowly but steadily.

III. Degrees of Comparison: positive, comparative and superlative.

1. a) Monosyllabic adjectives: *short – shorter – the shortest, big – bigger – the biggest, pale – paler – the palest, easy – easier – the easiest.*
 (But: *shy – shyer – the shyest, sly – slyer – the slyest*)
- b) Disyllabic adjectives ending in **-er, -ow, -y, -le**: *happy – happier – the happiest.*
- c) Disyllabic adjectives with the stress on the second syllable:
se`vere – se`verer – the se`verest.
2. a) Most disyllabic adjectives: *useful – more useful – the most useful.*
- b) Adjectives of more than two syllables: *beautiful – more beautiful – the most beautiful.*
- c) Adjectives of participial origin:
bored – more bored – the most bored, boring – more boring – the most boring.
3. The following adjectives may form their degrees of comparison using both methods:
 - **monosyllabic**: *clear, free, safe, true, wise (clear – clearer – the clearest, clear – more clear – the most clear);*
 - **disyllabic**: *clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, quiet, simple, shallow, stupid (common – commoner – the commonest, common – more common – the most common).*

Note. The superlative is sometimes used without **the** when the adjective denotes a very high degree of quality and no comparison with other objects is implied:

e.g. The path is steepest here. She is happiest at home.

IV. Irregular forms:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good	better	the best
bad	worse	the worst
far	farther further (<i>more, additional</i>)	the farthest (<i>about distance</i>) the furthest (<i>about time and distance</i>)
near	nearer nearer	the nearest (<i>about distance</i>) the next (<i>about order</i>)
late (<i>the late President Yeltsin – последний; покойный</i>)	later (the) latter (<i>последний из двух</i>) [<i>the former – бывший; первый из двух</i>]	the latest (<i>about time</i>) = i.e. most recent the last (<i>about order</i>) = i.e. final
old	older elder (brother, sister)	the oldest (<i>about age</i>) the eldest (<i>for seniority; used only attributively</i>) – (самый старший в семье)
little	smaller	the smallest

V. The intensifiers of the comparative degree:

a) **much, far, a great deal, a lot, even** (намного, гораздо, значительно, даже):

e.g. It is **much** cheaper. This book is **much** more interesting. He speaks English even better than I expected.

b) a bit, a little (немного):

e.g. *Could you speak **a bit (a little)** more slowly?*

c) The intensifier of the superlative degree “by far”:

e.g. *He is **by far** the best student in the class.*

VI. The following adjectives do not form degrees of comparison:

1. Limiting qualitative adjectives which single out or determine the type of things or persons: *childless, dead, left, medical, middle, previous.*
2. Relative adjectives: *woolen, wooden, flaxen, ashen.*
3. Adjectives with comparative and superlative meaning (the so-called gradables) which are of Latin origin:
 - *inferior to, superior to, prior, upper, lower, former, inner, junior, senior;*
 - *minimal, optimal, proximal.*
4. Adjectives already denoting some gradation of quality: *darkish, greenish.*

VII. To compare 2 things we use the + comparative:

e.g. *Of the two evils he chose **the lesser**. Tom is **the taller** of the two.*

VIII. Substantivized adjectives:

- *the rich, the poor; the deaf, the blind, the elderly, the wealthy, the wounded, etc.*
- *the English, the British, the Danish, the Irish, the Swedish, the Turkish, the Welsh, the Spaniards, the Swiss, the Dutch, the Chinese, the Japanese, the Portuguese.*
- *the supernatural, the unknown, the beautiful, the extravagant, the grotesque, the unusual.*

IX. Types of Comparisons:

Comparative + than (more... than, less... than)	<i>This watch is <u>more expensive</u> than that one. She is five years <u>younger</u> than her cousin. John is <u>less musical</u> than his sister.</i>
Comparative + as	<i>He became <u>more cautious</u> as he grew.</i>
The most (the least) + of, in, ever	<i>This is <u>the most exciting</u> place of all I have ever been to. Sue is <u>the least experienced</u> person in our team. It's <u>the biggest</u> risk I've ever had to take.</i>
As... as (equality)	<i>He is as tall as his father. You are not as nice as people think.(+) She is not as slim as her sister.</i>
Not so... as (inequality)	<i>The sun is not so hot today as I thought it would be.(–)</i>
Twice as... as Three times as... as The same... as	<i>Their car is twice as expensive as mine. These jeans cost three times as expensive as those ones. I'll have the same ice-cream as last time.</i>
Half as much/many (вдвое меньше) Half the size (the weight) Half the age	<i>I paid for it half as much as she did. My trunk is half the weight of yours. He is half my age.</i>
The... the... = (чем..., тем...)	<i>The more we learn, the more we forget. The more we forget, the less we know. The less we know, the less we forget. The sooner you come, the better.</i>
like	<i>Everyone is ill, so our house is like a hospital. She looks like an angel. This coffee tastes like water. No one can cook like my mother.</i>
as	<i>This building was used as a hospital during the war. I'm engaged as (a) teacher here. (I'm a teacher.) Do it as I showed you. When in Rome do as the Romans do.</i>

X. Set phrases:

- a change for the better (for the worse)** – перемена к лучшему (худшему);
- so much the better (the worse) for sb** – тем лучше (хуже) для...;
- to be the worse for** – делать что-то еще хуже, еще больше;
- none the worse for** – хуже не станет (не стало) от...;
- if the worst comes to the worst** – в худшем случае;
- to go from bad to worse** – становиться все хуже и хуже;
- as best** – в полную меру старания, как только можно;
- at (the) best** – в лучшем случае;
- to matter in the least** – не иметь ни малейшего значения.

XI. Syntactic functions of adjectives:

1. **An attribute:** *She had **pleasant blue** eyes and very **long fair** hair which she wore in **neat** plaits round her head.*
2. **A predicative:** *He was **aware** of what was going on in the office.*
3. **Part of a compound verbal predicate:** *She lay **motionless**, as if she were asleep.*
4. **An objective predicative:** *She wore her hair **short**. She made him **happy**. (The result).*
5. **A subjective predicative:** *Her hair was dyed **blonde**.*
6. **An adverbial modifier:** ***When ripe**, the apples are sweet. **Whether right or wrong**...
If possible...*

THE ADVERB

1. **Adverbs of time:** afterwards, already, at once, eventually, immediately, lately, now, presently, soon, suddenly, then, when, yesterday, yet, etc.
2. **Adverbs of frequency:** always, constantly, hardly ever, never, occasionally, often, seldom, sometimes, three times, twice, etc.
3. **Adverbs of place or direction:** abroad, ashore, backwards, below, downstairs, everywhere, here, inside, outside, seaward(s), there, to and fro, where, etc.
4. **Adverbs of manner:** badly, clearly, deeply, fast, how, quickly, sideways, sincerely, truly, somehow, well, willingly, etc.
5. **Adverbs of degree or intensifiers:**
 - a) Emphasizers: actually, at all, clearly, definitely, indeed, just, literally, plainly, really, simply, etc.
 - b) Amplifiers (expressing a high degree): absolutely, altogether, badly, bitterly, completely, deeply, entirely, extremely, (by) far, fully, greatly, heartily, much, perfectly, quite, terribly, thoroughly, utterly, very, etc.
 - c) Downtoners (lowering the effect): a bit, almost, barely, enough, hardly, kind of, (a) little, moderately, more or less, nearly, partly, quite, rather, scarcely, slightly, somewhat, sort of, sufficiently, etc.
6. **Focusing adverbs:**
 - a) Restrictive: alone, exactly, just, merely, only, precisely, purely, simply, especially, etc.
 - b) Additive: again, also, either, equally, even, too, etc.
7. **Viewpoint adverbs:** economically, geographically, linguistically, morally, politically, scientifically, weatherwise, etc.
8. **Attitudinal adverbs:**
 - a) commenting on the truth-value: admittedly, allegedly, apparently, certainly, decidedly, definitely, doubtless, maybe, obviously, perhaps, possibly, presumably, probably, supposedly, surely, undoubtedly, etc.
 - b) expressing attitude towards what is being said: amazingly, cleverly, (in)correctly, (un)fortunately, (un)justly, (un)luckily, curiously, foolishly, funnily enough, incredibly, ironically, oddly, preferably, reasonably, remarkably, sensibly, significantly, strangely, tragically, typically, unexpectedly, etc.
9. **Conjunctive adverbs:** above all, accordingly, alternatively, anyhow, anyway, as a result, at any rate, besides, by the way, consequently, finally, first(ly), secondly, for all that, for example, further, furthermore, hence, however, incidentally, in other words, in spite of that, instead, in that case, lastly, likewise, meantime, meanwhile, namely, nevertheless, next, on the contrary, on the one (other) hand, otherwise, rather, similarly, so, still, that is, then, therefore, though, thus, too, yet, etc.
10. **Formulaic adverbs** (markers of courtesy): cordially, heartily, kindly, please, etc.

Formation

1. **Adjective + ly:** calm – calmly, kind – kindly, full – fully, true – truly; public – publicly.
2. **Other suffixes:**
 - **fold:** twofold – вдвое, вдвойне; manifold – разнообразно, многообразно;

- **like**: warlike (ВОИНСТВЕННО);
- **most**: innermost, outermost;
- **ways**: sideways – в сторону, боком; longways;
- **wise**: (anti)clockwise, otherwise, crosswise (перекрестно), corkscrew – wise;
- **ward(s)**: afterwards, onward(s), seaward(s), homeward(s), backward, forward.

3. In a + adjective + manner (way, fashion):

brotherly
cowardly
elderly
friendly
fatherly
lively

in a { lovely } way (manner, fashion)

lonely
manly
motherly
silly
sisterly
ugly

4. **Adjective = adverb**: deep = deep, early = early, fast = fast, high = high, hard = hard, long = long, loud = loud, late = late, low = low, near = near, right = right, straight = straight, wide = wide; daily = daily, weekly = weekly, monthly = monthly, yearly = yearly.

Negative adverbs and pronouns

- **hardly (ever), scarcely, nearly, barely, rarely, never, seldom, unlikely;**
- **no, nobody, nothing, nowhere;**
- **without;**
- **little, few.**

*e.g. He is **hardly** of any help for us either, is he?*

Degrees of Comparison

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
1. soon early	sooner earlier	soonest (скопее всего) the soonest (скопее всех) earliest
2. seriously	more/less seriously	most/less seriously
3. well badly much little a lot far	better worse more less more further/farther	best worst most least most furthest/farthest
4. often quickly slowly	oftener (more often) quicker (more quickly) slower (more slowly)	oftenest (most often) quickest (most quickly) slowest (most slowly)

5. Common phrases: *The soonest I can send it is Monday.*
The earliest I can come is 5 o'clock.
Bill ran (the) slowest of all and came last.
He who laughs last laughs longest

Adjectives and Adverbs with Different Meaning

Adjective	Adverb 1	Adverb 2
clear	clear – на расстоянии	clearly – отчетливо
clean	clean – прямо (<i>The bullet went clean through his shoulder.</i>)	cleanly – чисто
close	close (близко)	closely (connected) – тесно; тщательно
deep	deep – глубоко	deeply – очень сильно
direct	direct – прямо, напрямую	directly – немедленно
easy – легкий	easy – спокойно, неторопливо; нежно, слегка (<i>Take it easy.</i>)	easily – легко, без труда
free	free – бесплатно	freely – свободно
full	full – вполне, очень	fully – полностью
fine	fine – отлично, прекрасно	finely – тонко, деликатно
hard	hard – упорно	hardly – едва
high	high – высоко	highly (praise, appreciate) – в высшей степени
near	near – близко	nearly – почти, приблизительно
last	last – позже всех, последний	lastly – в конце концов
late	late – поздно	lately – недавно, в последнее время
pretty	pretty – довольно, в значительной степени	prettily – красиво, привлекательно
sharp	sharp – ровно, точно	sharply – резко; колко, зло
short	short – внезапно, неожиданно (<i>I saw him stop short.</i>)	shortly – вскоре, коротко
sure	sure – действительно	surely – конечно, непременно
wide	wide – широко	widely (known) – повсеместно

THE VERBALS

The Verbals (non-finite forms of the verb) do not limit the verb to a particular number, tense, person or mood and do not function as predicates.

The Gerund

Voice Aspect	Active	Passive
Simple	<i>I prefer driving to Excuse my not writing to you. His shirt needs ironing.</i>	<i>being driven. Nobody likes being laughed at. She insisted on his being invited.</i>
Perfect	<i>She denies (not) having ironed the shirt.</i>	<i>He remembered (not) having been laughed at.</i>

I. The Markers

- his being given
- swimming__ (no plural form)
- of being given
- give up repairing it (direct object)
- (no article) swimming
- I was tired of sitting still (adverb)

II. The Absolute Gerundial Construction

*e.g. We heard **the bolt clicking**.* (то, что; тем, что; ..., как)

III. The Gerund is always used after

1. **Prepositions:** after, before, besides, by, except for, for, for fear of, for the sake of, from, in, instead of, in spite of, on, on the verge of, through, without, etc.
2. **Word combinations:** be afraid of, be angry with sb for doing sth, be annoyed with sb for doing sth, be ashamed of, be aware of, be bored with, be busy, be capable of, be clever at, be delighted at, be disappointed at, be engaged in, feel like doing something, be fond of, be good (bad) at, be grateful for, can't stand (help, bear), have difficulty in, be guilty of, be interested in, be keen on, be no good (no use, no trouble), be pleased at, be proud of, be responsible for, be slow at, be sorry for/about, be sure of, be surprised at, be tired of, be used (accustomed) to doing sth, get used (accustomed) to doing sth, be worried about, be worth (But: *It is **worth while** to mention.*)
3. **Nouns used with prepositions:** apology for, art of, chance of, difficulty (in), experience in, habit of, harm of, idea of, importance of, interest in, means of, mistake of, objection to, opportunity of, plan for, point in/of, preparation for, process of, purpose of, reaction to, reason for, right of, sense of, skill in, surprise at, way of.
4. **Verbs followed by prepositions:** accuse of, apologize for, approve of, blame smb for, forgive for, concentrate on, congratulate on, count on, depend on, hear of, inform of, insist on, look forward to doing sth, object to, persist in, persuade sb into, prevent from, put off,

rely on, result in, stop (from) doing sth, succeed in, suspect sb of, take to, thank for, think of, be/get used to, be/get accustomed to.

5. **Phrasal verbs:** burst out, give up, go (on), leave off, keep on, put off.
6. **Such verbs as:** admit, acknowledge, anticipate, appreciate, avoid, consider, continue, delay, deny, enjoy, escape, excuse, fancy, finish, forgive, foresee, include, imagine, involve, justify (объяснять, оправдывать), keep (on), mention, mind, miss, postpone, practise, recall, recollect, report, resent (возмущаться), risk, suggest.

The Infinitive

Voice Aspect	Active	Passive
Simple	<i>I prefer not to know. He made me laugh.</i>	<i>I don't like to be laughed at.</i>
Continuous	<i>I happened to be passing his house at that time.</i>	—
Perfect Continuous	<i>She appeared to have been cleaning the house since morning (for two hours).</i>	—
Perfect	<i>She is happy (not) to have seen us. (A prior action). I meant to have gone there. (a prior action wasn't carried out).</i>	<i>She is happy (not) to have been invited there.</i>

The Functions of the Infinitive

1. Subject:

- in the initial position: ***To study** is never late.*
- with the anticipatory “it”: ***It** is never late **to study**. It is easy **to understand**.*

2. Predicative:

*His greatest wish was **to tell** her everything. All he wanted to do was (**to**) **run** away.*

3. Predicate:

*Why **waste** your time on this kind of work? Why not **go** there right now?
You – (**to**) **suggest** this! Me – (**to**) **write**!*

4. Part of a compound verbal predicate:

- After modal verbs: *I **can speak** English well.*
- After *to seem, to appear, to turn out, to prove, to happen, to chance, to pretend*:
*He **seemed to have gained** all he wanted.*

5. Attribute:

*There is no matter **to discuss**. There is somebody **to look after**. He was the first **to come**.
A man in your position has so much **to lose**. I'm not the one **to believe**.*

6. Object:

- **After verbs of sense perception:**
to hear, to listen to; to see, to watch, to notice, to observe; to feel.
*We **heard** him **lock** the door.*
- **After verbs of wish and intention:** *desire, intend, mean, want, wish, etc.*
*I **want** you **to come** along with us.*

7. Adverbial modifier of:

- **purpose:** *He said it (in order, so as) to save your life.*
- **consequence (result)** after adjectives modified by “enough” and “too”:
I am too old to drive.

8. Parenthesis:

to be honest, to begin with, to cut the long story short, to get to the point, not to make too much of it, to put it another way, to put it mildly (rudely), to tell the truth, to say the least, to say nothing of, to be frank, etc.

To put it mildly, she is just a bit inquisitive.

9. As a second action accompanying the action of the predicate verb:

He returned ten minutes later to find Bridget ready for departure. (= and found).

The Infinitive Constructions

I. The Absolute Infinitive Construction:

The absolute construction has the function of **adverbial modifier of attending circumstances**. There are two parallel actions in this sentence pattern. Each action has its own subject.

e.g. It was a quiet house now, with only his secretary to see to his meals and to take care of his business affairs.

II. The Complex Subject:

e.g. He is said to be a good doctor.

1. With the following verbs in the Passive Voice: to allege (утверждать, заявлять), to believe, to consider, to expect, to hear, to know, to make, to see, to suppose, to say, to think, to report.

e.g. They are alleged to have signed a secret treaty. (Утверждают, что они якобы подписали тайное соглашение.) The manuscript is believed to have been written in the 12th century.

2. With the word groups: to be certain (to be sure), to be (un)likely, etc.

e.g. He is sure (certain) to come. They are likely to be married in October.

3. After pairs of synonyms: to seem (to appear) – казаться, to prove (to turn out) – оказаться, to happen (to chance) – случаться.

e.g. He appeared to have been running all the way. The man seemed to have come from far off. (Казалось, что...) Don't you happen to know her? (Ты ее случайно не знаешь?)

III. The Complex Object:

e.g. I want you to do it. I saw you cross the street.

1. After the verbs of mental activity (to consider, to believe, to know, to suppose, etc.)*She believed him to have left for London.*

2. After the verbs of declaring (to declare, to pronounce, to report, to teach, etc.)

He reported the boat to have been seen not far away.

3. After the verbs of feeling and emotion (to (dis)like, to love, to hate, etc.)

She hated her son to be separated from her.

4. After the verbs of wish and intention (to desire, to intend, to mean, to want, to wish)

He only wished you to be near him.

5. After the verbs of order and permission (to ask (for), to allow, to command, to encourage, to forbid, to order, etc.) In most cases after these verbs the Passive Infinitive is used:

The captain ordered the cases to be loaded.

6. After the verbs of inducement (побуждение) (to have, to let, to make) + the Bare Infinitive.

She made me obey her. I won't have you speak to me like that.

7. After the verbs of sense perception (to see, to watch, to notice, to observe; to hear, to listen to; to feel) The Bare Infinitive is used in this case:
 e.g. Nobody **noticed** her father leave the room.

IV. The For-with-the-Infinitive Construction:

e.g. It is difficult **for me to decide**.

The Use of the Particle “to” with the Infinitive

I. The Bare Infinitive (without the particle “to”):

1. After modal and auxiliary verbs (can, may, must, need, dare, shall, should, will, would; do, have):

He **dared not** approach her. You **needn't** apologize! I **must** be going.

2. After the verbs of sense perception (in Complex Object):

to see, to watch, to notice, to observe; to hear, to listen to; to feel.

e.g. Suddenly he **felt** something hard touch his leg. Nobody **noticed** him leave the room.

He was **listening** attentively to the chairman speak.

If the meaning is passive we use Participle II: I saw the fire slowly **conquered**.

If the process is expressed Participle I is used: He saw **her crossing** the street (a part of action was seen. He saw her when she was in the middle of doing it).

(The Complex Object with an Infinitive shows that the whole process was seen from beginning to end: I saw **him cross** the street.)

3. After the verbs of inducement: (to have, to make, to let) somebody do something:

e.g. What **makes** you think so? I won't **have** you speak to me like that (Я не допускаю, чтобы...) **Let** him speak.

Note: After these verbs in the Passive (№ 2, 3) the to-infinitive is used:

She was **seen to leave** the house. She was **made to do** it.

4. Would rather (sooner): e.g. I'd rather take a taxi.

5. Had better: e.g. We'd better stop at the next petrol station to fill up.

6. Why (not): e.g. Why not go there? Why pay more at other shops?

7. After **and, or, except, but, than, as, like**. When two infinitive structures are joined by **and, or, except, but, than, as, like** the second is often without “to”:

I'd like **to lie** down **and** go to sleep. We had nothing **to do** **except** look at the cinema posters. I'm ready **to do** anything **but** work on a farm. It's **as easy to smile as frown**.

8. Rather than: **Rather than** wait any more, I decided to go home by taxi.

II. To + Infinitive:

1. After would like/would love/would prefer.

I'd **prefer to stay** in tonight. = Я бы предпочел остаться вечером дома.

2. It + to be + adjective + of + noun (pronoun) + to: **It is so nice of you to come**.

3. It + to be + noun + to: **It was a surprise to hear** him insisting on it.

4. So + adjective + as: Will you be **so kind as to show** me the way to Trafalgar square?

5. In Complex Subject: **He is said to be** a good teacher.

6. In Complex Object: We can't **force you to stay** here.

(Except: to see, to watch, to notice, to observe; to hear, to listen to; to feel; (to have, to make, to let) somebody do something).

7. After it is worth while:

Do you think **it would be worth while to open** a shop somewhere else in the neighbourhood?

8. After **for**-phrase: *It is natural **for young men to be** interested in politics.*
9. **The Infinitive as adverbial modifier of purpose** (after **so as**, **in order**, etc.)
*We had gone into the middle of Hyde Park **so as not to be** overheard.*
*I was silent for a moment **in order to give** greater force to my next remark.*
10. After **enough**: *He is sensible **enough to agree** to their proposal.*
11. **Too + adjective + to-infinitive**: *She was **too tired to go** out.*
12. **The Infinitive as Parenthesis** (ВВОДНОЕ СЛОВО): ***To tell** the truth... **To put** it mildly...*
13. **The Infinitive as Attribute**: *He gave her permission **to leave**.*
14. **In set phrases**: *This never-**to-be-forgotten** day, a much-**to-be-longed-for** place.*
15. **With ordinal numerals and “the last”**:
*He was always **the first to enter** the dining-room and **the last to leave**.*
16. In **wh**-phrase: *I don't know **who else to ask** (**what to say, where to go, when to begin**, etc.)*
17. **The Infinitive as a Second Action Accompanying the Action of the Predicate Verb**:
*One night he **awakened to hear** a light rain whispering in the garden. (...он проснулся и услышал...)*

III. The Bare Infinitive = to-Infinitive:

1. “**To help**”: e.g. *She helped me **(to)** carry my things.*
2. “**To know**” in the meaning “to experience”, which is used in Present Perfect or in Past Perfect.
e.g. *I **have** never **known** her **(to)** lose her nerve before. I **had** never **known** Hector **(to)** behave like this.*
3. **The Infinitive as Predicative**. In this function it has appositive meaning, i.e. explains the meaning of the subject. The subject is expressed by **all**, **the least**, **the most** modified by an attributive clause which usually contains the verb **to do**.
e.g. *All we can do is **(to)** run away. The least we can do is **(to)** try and **understand** their idea.*
*The most he could do was **(to)** give me a cigarette.*
4. **In exclamations**: e.g. *Me – **(to)** write!*
5. **After than, rather than, but, except**.
“+” *There is hardly anything to do but **to work** out a plan.*
“-” *I'll do anything but **work** with children.*
6. **To bid (просить)**: e.g. *Bid him **(to)** come in. He bade me **(to)** sit down.*

Verbs followed by the Infinitive:

1. **The verb + the Infinitive**: afford, agree, arrange, bother, care, claim, consent, decide, demand, determine, endeavour, fail, guarantee, hasten, hesitate, hope, learn (how to), long, manage, offer, prepare, presume, pretend, proceed, promise, propose, refuse, resolve, seek, strive, swear, tend, threaten, trouble, undertake, volunteer, vow.
*He always **endeavoured to please** his mother. I **vowed not to follow** his advice again.*
2. **The verb + a noun (pronoun) + the Infinitive**: accustom, aid, appoint, assist, cause, command, challenge, compel, direct, enable, encourage, entreat, force, impel, implore, incite, induce, inspire, instruct, invite, lead, order, persuade, press, prompt, provoke, remind, require, stimulate, summon, teach (how to), tell, tempt, trust, warn.
*The collapse of the strike **enabled the company to resume** normal bus service.*
*Please, **remind me to answer** the letter.*

3. **The Infinitive, with or without a preceding noun, is used after these verbs:** ask, beg, choose, dare, desire, elect, expect, help, mean (intend), request, want, wish.

I wish to see the manager. She asked me to approach her.

The Split Infinitive:

e.g. It was a mistake to even try to help you. She doesn't want to even see him.

The Gerund or the Infinitive?

1. Verbs used with the Gerund and the Infinitive with a change in meaning:

Verbs	+ Infinitive	+ Gerund
be afraid of	To be too frightened to do sth (a future action, the idea): <i>I'm <u>afraid to go out</u>.</i>	Be afraid of the result: <i>Because I'm <u>afraid of being bitten</u> by the dogs.</i>
begin, start	With the verbs of mental activity and feeling: <i>I <u>began to feel</u> cold.</i> The subject is an inanimate noun: <i>The barometer <u>began to fall</u>.</i> After Continuous Tenses: <i>It <u>is starting to snow</u>.</i>	A process: <i>It <u>started drizzling</u>.</i>
consider	To think: <i>I <u>consider going</u> to Italy.</i>	To regard as (считать): <i>I <u>consider him to be</u> clever.</i>
forget	Forget to do sth (a future activity): <i>I <u>forgot to lock</u> the car.</i>	Forget a past event: <i>We'll never <u>forget visiting</u> Paris.</i>
go on	Finish doing sth and start doing sth else): <i>After finishing her BA, she <u>went on to get</u> a master's degree.</i>	Continue (about the same activity): <i>She <u>went on watching</u> TV.</i>
hate	Hate what one is about to do: <i>I <u>hate to interrupt</u>, but I must talk to you.</i>	Feel sorry for what one is doing: <i>I <u>hate making</u> you feel uncomfortable.</i>
like	1. To consider something to be useful, necessary (to like the idea): <i>I <u>like to get up</u> early.</i> Sth concrete (a particular reference): <i>I <u>like to fish</u> in this pond.</i> 2. <i>I didn't like <u>taking</u> the money but I had no alternative.</i>	1. To like the process of doing something (general preference): <i>I <u>like cooking</u>.</i> 2. <i>I didn't like <u>to drink</u> it as I didn't know what it was.</i>
loathe (не выносить)	In particular: <i>I <u>loathe to have</u> to do this dirty work.</i>	In general: <i>I <u>loathe travelling</u> by air.</i>
mean	To intend to do sth (to plan): <i>He <u>means to move</u> to Newcastle.</i>	Involve (значить): <i>Working harder <u>means getting</u> more money.</i> <i>Being a parent <u>means feeling</u> responsible. (to show the result of sth)</i>

prefer	Prefer + to-inf + (rather) than + inf without to: <i>I prefer to read a book (rather) than watch TV.</i>	In general (a habit) (general preference): <i>I prefer driving to cycling.</i>
would prefer	Specific preference: <i>I'd prefer to have an early night tonight.</i>	–
propose	To intend, to plan: <i>What do you propose to do now?</i>	To suggest sth (but more formal): <i>He proposed dealing with the problem without delay.</i>
recommend (allow, advice, encourage, permit)	With an object: <i>I recommend her to stop smoking</i>	Without an object: <i>I recommend doing it.</i>
regret	Be sorry to (in apologies), to announce bad news: <i>I regret to tell you that you have failed (It's a pity!)</i>	To feel sorry about a past action (сожалеть о прошлых действиях): <i>I regret telling lies.</i>
remember	Remember to do sth (не забыть) – (a future activity): <i>Remember to read the instructions.</i>	Recall a past event: <i>I don't remember meeting him before.</i>
remind	Remind to do sth in the future (напомнить): <i>She reminded me to feed the dog.</i>	Remind of a past event: <i>She reminded me of missing the date.</i>
stop	Pause temporarily with the purpose to start another activity (чтобы) (adverbial modifier of purpose): <i>He stopped to buy some milk on his way home. He stopped to smoke. They stopped to admire the scenery.</i>	Finish, cease, give up an activity (to stop what? – an object.) <i>Stop talking to each other, please!</i> <i>He stopped smoking.</i> <i>She stopped crying and smiled.</i>
teach/learn	The result of the study is meant: <i>He learnt to read when he was 5. I taught myself to type.</i>	Lessons or subjects of study are meant: <i>Jane goes to college twice a week to learn typing.</i> <i>He teaches skiing in the winter.</i>
try	Do one's best; attempt (пытаться): <i>She tried hard to cope with her new job. I tried to warn him but it was in vain. He tried to get up.</i>	Do sth as an experiment to see what will happen (пробовать): <i>Try adding some more sauce to your pasta. Try jogging for a change!</i>
want	Wish (хотеть): <i>I want to find a better job.</i>	Sth needs to be done (надо что-либо сделать): <i>Your dress wants cleaning.</i>

2. The Gerund and the Infinitive may be used without changes in meaning after:

to love, to like (dislike), to intend, to propose, to have, to plan, to prefer; can't bear, can't afford (particular preference – the Infinitive, general preference – the Gerund).

3. The main difference between the Gerund and the Infinitive:

- The Gerund:**
1. Is mostly used after prepositions.
 2. Refers the action to the past.
 3. Indicates an activity or process.
 4. The result is important.
 5. Describes general preferences.
 6. Serves as an object.

- The Infinitive:**
1. Refers the action to the future.
 2. Denotes a state of mind or mental activity.
 3. The idea is important.
 4. The grammatical subject is inanimate.
(*The barometer began to fall.*)
 5. Indicates a particular preference.
 6. The preceding verb is used in a continuous form
(*It's beginning to freeze.*)

The Participle

Voice Aspect	Active	Passive (only transitive verbs)
Participle I	<i>Arriving at the station we went straight to the booking office. I saw you dancing (crossing the street). The exhibition was fascinating. (Quality). The wet baby was crying (as a verb). The crying baby was wet (as an adjective).</i>	<i>A large house being built by the Svisloch is a new student dormitory. Being tired we went home at once.</i>
Participle II	–	<i>Words written in pencil are difficult to read. Asked whether he intended to return soon, he answered that not. Unwritten laws, a broken vase. The students were fascinated by the exhibition. I want to have my shirt ironed.</i>
Perfect Participle	<i>Not having finished his study he left Cambridge.</i>	<i>Having been sent to the wrong address the letter didn't reach him. (Having been asked = being asked = asked.)</i>

I. The Absolute Participial Construction

(так, как...; хотя...; после того, как...; когда...)

Death being contrary to their principles, the Forsytes took precautions against it.

***The letter having been written**, he went out to post it. **The room being** dark, I couldn't see him.
He sat at the fire-place, **head bowed**, motionless.*

II. The Objective Participial Construction

*I saw **you crossing** the street. We heard **them singing**.*

III. Substantivized Participles

The wounded, the disabled; the unknown.

CONJUNCTIONS

1. Coordinating conjunctions.

Coordinating conjunctions are used to join two similar grammatical constructions: two words, two phrases or two clauses.

e.g. *My friend **and** I will attend the meeting. Belarus is famous for the beauty of its landscape **and** the hospitality of its people. The sun rose **and** the birds began to sing.*

and (in addition): *She tried **and** succeeded.*

but (however): *They tried **but** did not succeed.*

or (alternatively): *Did you go out **or** stay at home?*

nor (and neither): *I did not see it, **nor** did they.*

yet (however): *The sun is warm, **yet** the air is cool.*

As illustrated above, a coordinate conjunction joins two verbs which have the same subject.

When a coordinate conjunction joins two verbs which do not have the same subject, the two coordinate clauses may be separated by a comma or semicolon, in order to make the meaning clear.

2. Correlative conjunctions.

Correlative conjunctions are used in pairs, in order to show the relationship between the ideas expressed in different parts of a sentence. For instance, in the following example, the expression **either... or** is used to indicate that the ideas expressed in the two clauses represent two alternative choices of action:

e.g. ***Either** you should study harder, **or** you should take a different course.*

The most commonly used correlative conjunctions are **both... and**, **either... or/and**, **neither... nor**.

both... and: *He is **both** intelligent **and** good-natured.*

either... or: *I will **either** go for a walk **or** read a book.*

neither... nor: *He is **neither** rich **nor** famous.*

hardly... when: *He had **hardly** begun to work, **when** he was interrupted.*

if... then: ***If** that is true, **then** what happened is not surprising.*

no sooner... than: ***No sooner** had I reached the corner, **than** the bus came.*

not only... but also: *She is **not only** clever, **but also** hard-working.*

rather... than: *I would **rather** go swimming **than** go to the library.*

scarcely... when: ***Scarcely** had we left home, **when** it started to rain.*

what with... and: ***What with** all her aunts, uncles **and** cousins, she has many relatives.*

whether... or: *Have you decided **whether** you will come **or** not?*

3. Subordinating conjunctions – serve to join a subordinate clause to the principal clause.

As:

1. because: *As he is my friend, I will help him.*

2. when: *We watched **as** the plane took off.*

After:

later in time: *After the train left, we went home.*

Although or though:

in spite of the fact that: *Although it was after midnight, we did not feel tired.*

Before:

earlier than: *I arrived before the stores were open.*

Because:

for the reason that: *We had to wait, because we arrived early.*

For:

for, because: *He is happy, for he enjoys his work.*

If:

on condition that: *If she is here, we will see her.*

Lest:

for fear that: *I watched closely, lest he make a mistake.*

(Note the use of the Subjunctive Mood in the clause with **lest**. P. 51)

Providing or provided:

on condition that: *All will be well, providing (provided) you are careful.*

Since:

1. from a past time: *I have been here since the sun rose.*
2. as, because: *Since you are here, you can help me.*

So or so that:

1. consequently: *It was raining, so we did not go out.*
2. in order that: *I am saving money so I can buy a bicycle.*

NOTE. When used with the meaning “in order that”, “so” is usually followed by “that” in formal English.

e.g. *I am saving money so that I can buy a bicycle.*

Supposing:

if: *Supposing that happens, what will you do?*

Than:

used in comparisons: *He is taller than you are.*

Unless:

except when, if not: *Unless he helps us, we cannot succeed.*

Until/till:

up to the time when: *I will wait until I hear from you.*

Whereas:

1. because: *Whereas this is a public building, it is open to everyone.*
2. on the other hand: *He is short, whereas you are tall.*

Whether:

if: *I do not know whether she was invited.*

While:

1. at the time when: *While it was snowing, we played cards.*
2. on the other hand: *He is rich, while his friend is poor.*
3. although: *While I am not an expert, I will do my best.*

The following phrases are often used at the beginning of subordinate clauses:

As if: in a similar way: *She talks **as if** she knows everything.*

As long as:

1. if: ***As long as** we cooperate, we can finish the work easily.*
2. while: *He has lived there **as long as** I have known him.*

As soon as:

Immediately, when: *Write to me **as soon as** you can.*

As though:

in a similar way: *It looks **as though** there will be a storm.*

Even if:

in spite of a possibility: *I am going out even if it rains.*

In case:

because of a possibility: *Take a sweater **in case** it gets cold.*

Or else:

otherwise: *Please be careful, **or else** you may have an accident.*

So as to:

in order to: *I hurried **so as to** be on time.*

Certain words, such as **after, before, since and until** may function either as prepositions or subordinating conjunctions. However it should be noted that in some cases different words must be used as prepositions and subordinating conjunctions, in order to express similar meanings.

Meaning:	Preposition:	Conjunction:
for this reason	because of	because
in spite of this	despite	although
at the time	when	during, while
in a similar way	like	as if

4. Connecting Adverbs.

accordingly:	<i>So he was very persuasive. Accordingly, I did what he asked.</i>
also: (in addition)	<i>She is my neighbour; she is also my best friend.</i>
besides: (in addition)	<i>I like the job. Besides, I need the money.</i>
consequently: (so)	<i>He had a fever; consequently, he stayed at home.</i>
furthermore: (in addition)	<i>You should stop smoking. Furthermore, you should do it at once.</i>
hence: (for that reason)	<i>He is a good friend. Hence, I was not embarrassed to ask him for help.</i>
however: (but)	<i>We wanted to arrive on time; however, we were delayed by traffic.</i>
likewise: (in addition)	<i>The region is beautiful. Likewise, the climate is excellent.</i>
moreover: (in addition)	<i>She is very intelligent; moreover, she is very ambitious.</i>
nevertheless: (but)	<i>They are proud. Nevertheless, I like them.</i>
nonetheless: (but)	<i>The ascent was dangerous. Nonetheless, he decided to attempt it.</i>
otherwise: (if not, or else)	<i>We should consult them; otherwise, they may be upset.</i>

still: (but) *It is a long way to the beach. **Still**, it is a fine day to go swimming.*
then:(1. next, afterwards) *We went shopping, **then** we had lunch.*
(2. so) *If you are sure, **then** I must believe you.*
therefore: (for that reason) *I was nervous. **Therefore**, I could not do my best.*
thus: (so, in this way) *He travelled as quickly as possible.*
***Thus**, he reached Boston the next day.*

Connecting adverbs with meanings similar to:

and: also, besides, furthermore, likewise, moreover.
but: however, nevertheless, nonetheless, still.
so: accordingly, consequently, hence, therefore, thus.

THE NUMERAL

Cardinal Numerals	Ordinal Numerals
1 one	1 st first
2 two	2 nd second
3 three	3 rd third
4 four	4 th fourth
5 five	5 th fifth
6 six	6 th sixth
7 seven	7 th seventh
8 eight	8 th eighth
9 nine	9 th ninth
10 ten	10 th tenth
11 eleven	11 th eleventh
12 twelve	12 th twelfth
13 thirteen	13 th thirteenth
21 twenty-one	21 st twenty-first
30 thirty	30 th thirtieth
40 forty	40 th fortieth
50 fifty	50 th fiftieth
60 sixty	60 th sixtieth
70 seventy	70 th seventieth
80 eighty	80 th eightieth
90 ninety	90 th ninetieth
100 a (one) hundred	100 th hundredth
101 a (one) hundred and one	101 st hundred and first
200 two hundred	200 th two hundredth
300 three hundred	300 th three hundredth
1,000 a (one) thousand	1,000 th thousandth
2,000 two thousand	2,000 th two thousandth
2,001 two thousand and one	2,001 st two thousand and first
2,745 two thousand seven hundred and forty-five	2,745 th two thousand seven hundred and forty-fifth
3,000 three thousand	3,000 th three thousandth
100,000 a (one) hundred thousand	100,000 th hundred thousandth
1,000,000 a (one) million	1,000,000 th millionth
1,000,000,000 a (one) milliard (Br.) a (one) billion (Am.)	1,000,000,000 th milliardth (Br.) billionth (Am.)

Cardinals are used	Ordinals are used
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> To indicate the number of chapter, page, paragraph, volume, act (in a play), etc.: (<i>chapter 3, paragraph 14, page 122</i>). To indicate the number of buildings, apartments (flats), rooms, buses, gates, sizes (<i>bus 47, size six</i>) To indicate chronological dates: <i>The first battle was fought in 1775 (seventeen seventy-five)</i> To denote decades: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> “s”: <i>the 60s = the sixties, the 1960s = the nineteen sixties;</i> ’s’: <i>the 90’s, the 80’s.</i> 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> To rank items: <i>the third chapter, the fifth volume, the sixth paragraph</i> To express fractions: <i>a fifth, a sixth, an eighth, a tenth</i> To talk about dates <i>We arrived on March 25, 2009.</i> <i>We arrived on March 25th.</i> When speaking use: <i>March the twenty-fifth (the twenty-fifth of March)</i> <i>May 21, 1956 = May the twenty-first, nineteen (hundred and) fifty-six.</i> With the names of kings and queens: <i>Elizabeth II = Elizabeth the Second</i> <i>George VI = George the Sixth</i>

Decimals: 0.1 = naught point one; 3.5 = three point five; 8.03 = eight point naught three.
Common fractions: $\frac{1}{2}$ = a half; $\frac{1}{4}$ = a fourth/a quarter; $\frac{3}{4}$ = three fourths; $1\frac{5}{8}$ = one and five eighths.

Percentages: 5 % = five per cent; 0.5 % = naught point five per cent.

The Article before Numerals

–	a	the
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Chapter 5, bus 47, gate 6, in 2009.</i> Names of Roman numerals: <i>World War I, World War II (But: the Second World War).</i> Time: <i>He got up at 7.30 a.m. I get up at seven o’clock.</i> Names of streets and roads: <i>Fifth Avenue, Tenth Street, 102 Main Street.</i> <i>at first sight (but: at a glance).</i> 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>Suddenly he heard a shot, then a second and a third (другой, еще один).</i> <i>A dozen, a score, a hundred, a thousand, a million (in the singular)</i> But: <i>one hundred and ten.</i> <i>a first night – премьера; an only child.</i> 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <i>The second week, the first month.</i> <i>I saw two men in the pub. The two men were dressed in black.</i> <i>Elizabeth II (the Second) Henry VIII (the Eighth).</i> To denote decades: <i>in the 60s (in the sixties) = in the 60’s.</i> On the one hand, on the other hand.

Note.1. Dozen, score, hundred, thousand, million do not take -s when they stand after numerals:

e.g. *Two dozen eggs, five dozen, three score, two million people.*
(But: *two millions of people, three millions of books.*)

When they are not preceded by another numeral or a pronoun, they take -s before of + a plural noun:

e.g. *Millions of people want to live in peace. I receive hundreds of calls every day.*
(The exact number is not indicated).

2. Cardinal numerals are hyphenated: 53 – fifty-three.
3. Cardinal numerals ending in **one** require the plural form of the noun:
twenty-one students, fifty-one years.
4. Fractions between 1 and 2 are normally used with plural nouns:
*It weighs **one and a half tons**. The house has about **1.75 hectares** of land.*

Numerals in phrases

*He was a stout man **in his (early/mid/late) fifties**.*

*She was in her late **teens**.*

*She is a **twenty-year-old** student. My son is a **boy of 20**. He went to school **at the age of 6**.*

*My wife is **6 years younger** than me.*

*What shoe size are you? – I take **a size 39 in** shoes.*

*She is **a size 12 in** clothes.*

*My flat is roughly **70 square metres in size**.*

*Our sitting-room is **five metres by four**.*

*It takes me **half an hour** to get to the University. It took him **an hour and a half** to get there.*

*I'll be back **in half an hour**. Seven hours and **a half** is enough for sleep.*

*He was driving at **a speed of 60 miles an hour**.*

*He is leaving **by the six thirty-five train**.*

*I've told you about it **a thousand times (thousands of times)**.*

*It's **a ten-minute walk** from my house = It's **ten minutes' walk** from my house.*

*Diana graduated from the University **in the year of 2004**.*

*Today is **30 degrees above (below) zero**.*

*We'll need **an extra 10 pounds**. I've had **a very busy 3 days**.*

*In **another 5 years** I will move to a new flat.*

APPENDIX

Appendix 1

Prepositions

About

1. On the subject of: This is a story **about** elephants.
2. Approximately: He is **about** ten years old.

Above

1. Higher than; over: The plane flew **above** the clouds.
2. Earlier on a page: There is a heading **above** each diagram.

Across

1. From one side to the other: We walked **across** the field.
2. On the other side of: There is a store **across** the street.

After

1. Later in time: **after** ten o'clock; **after** lunch.
2. Later in a series: "Q" comes **after** "P" in the alphabet.
3. In pursuit of: The dog ran **after the** cat.

Against

1. In opposition to: Theft is **against** the law.
2. Touching; supported by: I leaned my bicycle **against** the wall.

Along

1. Following the length of: We walked **along** the road.

Among

1. Within a group: The money was shared **among** three people.
- Note:** In formal English, **among** is usually used only when referring to more than two persons or things. In contrast, **between** is used when referring to two persons or things.

Around

1. Circling something: We walked **around** the block.
2. Surrounding: There is a fence **around** the garden.
3. In different parts of : I looked **around** the house for the keys.
4. In the other direction: We turned **around** and went back home.
5. Approximately: He is **around** six feet tall.

At

1. A specific location: **at** 10, Downing Street; **at** the park.
2. A point in time: **at** 5 o'clock; **at** Christmas.
3. A condition: **at** peace; **at** war; **at** rest.
4. An activity: **at** work; **at** school; **at** play.
5. Towards: Look **at** someone; wave **at** someone.

Note: When referring to a specific location or to a point in time, **at** is usually used. When referring to a certain street or a certain day, **in** (Br.E.) or **on** (Am.E.) is usually used. When referring to a location as an area, or when referring to a unit of time longer than a day, **in** is usually used.

e.g. at Christmas; on Christmas day; in the Christmas holidays.

Before

1. Earlier in time: **before** two o'clock; **before** Christmas.
2. Earlier in a series: **S** comes **before** **T** in the alphabet.

Behind

1. At the back of: The little girl hid **behind** her mother.
2. Late: I am **behind** in my work.
3. Cause; origin: Who was **behind** that idea?

Below

1. Lower than; under: **below** freezing; **below** sea level.
2. Later on a page: Footnotes are provided **below** the text.

Beneath

1. Lower than; below: **beneath** the earth, **beneath** the wings.

Beside

1. Next to; at the side of: I sit **beside** her in class.

Besides

1. Also; as well as: We study other languages **besides** English.
Note the differing meanings of **beside** and **besides**.
Beside is usually used with reference to a physical location.

Between

1. An intermediate location: Toronto lies **between** Montreal and Vancouver.
2. An intermediate time: **between** Christmas and New Year's Day.
3. Intermediate in a series: **B** comes **between** **A** and **C** in the alphabet.
4. An intermediate amount: **between** five and ten people.
5. Within a group of two: The money was shared **between** two people.

Beyond

1. Farther than: The mountains lie **beyond** the horizon.
2. Further than; exceeding: That was **beyond** my expectations.

But

1. Except: I have read all **but** the last chapter.
Note: **But** is used more often as a conjunction than as a preposition.

By

1. Near: A house **by** the sea.
2. Past: He waved as he drove **by** the house.
3. Not later than: Try to finish the work **by** next week.
4. In units of: Cheaper **by** the dozen. Sold **by** weight.
5. Through the means of: Travel **by** plane. Written **by** him.

Concerning

1. Connected with; about: He studies everything **concerning** trees.

Despite

1. In spite of:

We walked down town **despite** the rain.

Down

1. To a lower position:
2. Further along:

The ball rolled **down** the hill.

He lives **down** the street.

During

1. Throughout a period:
2. Sometime within a period:

She works **during** the day.

An accident occurred **during** the night.

Except

1. Not including:

I have visited everyone **except** him.

For

- 1 Duration of time:
2. Distance:
3. Purpose:
4. In the direction of:
5. In favour of:
6. Considering:

We walked **for** two hours.

I walked **for** five kilometers.

I bought this jacket **for** you.

She left Minsk **for** New York.

We are **for** the proposal.

The boy is clever **for** his age.

From

1. Place of origin:
2. Start of a period of time:
3. Start of a range:
4. Cause:
5. Source:

We left **from** Boston. He comes **from** Mexico.
Where do you come **from**? What country are you **from**?

from now on; **from** yesterday until today.

From 20 to 30 people were present.

He suffers **from** nervousness.

I first heard the story **from** you.

In

1. Place thought of as an area:
2. Within a location:
3. Large units of time:
4. Within a certain time:
5. By means of:
6. Condition:
7. A member of:
8. Wearing:
9. With reference to:

in London; **in** Europe.

in the room; **in** the building.

That happened **in** March, **in** 1992.

I will return **in** an hour.

write **in** pencil (**in** ink, **in** block letters); speak **in** English.

in doubt; **in** a hurry; **in** secret.

He is **in** the orchestra; **in** the navy.

the boy **in** the blue shirt.

lacking **in** ideas; rich **in** oil.

Inside

1. Within:

They are **inside** the house.

Into

1. To the inside of:
2. Change of condition:

We stepped **into** the room.

The boy changed **into** a man.

Like

1. Resembling:
2. Appearing possible:
3. Be in a suitable mood for:

That looks **like** him.

It looks **like** rain.

I feel **like** going swimming.

Minus

1. Less: Three **minus** two equals one.

Near

1. Close to: **near** the school; **near** the ocean.

Of

1. Location: east **of** here; the middle **of** the road.
2. Possession: a friend **of** mine; the sound **of** music.
3. Part of a group: one **of** us; a member **of** the team.
4. Measurement: a cup **of** milk; two metres **of** snow.

Off

1. Not on; away from: Please keep **off** the grass.
2. At some distance from: There are islands **off** the coast.

On

1. Touching the surface of: **on** the table; **on** the wall.
2. A certain day: That happened **on** Sunday, **on** the 6th of June.
3. A certain street: (in) **on** South Street.
4. About: a book **on** engineering.
5. A state or condition: **on** strike; **on** fire; **on** holiday.
6. By means of: live **on** a pension; shown **on** television.

Onto

1. To a position on: The child climbed **onto** the table.

Opposite

1. Facing: The library is **opposite** the fire station.

Out of

1. To the outside of: She went **out of** the room.
2. From among: We won two games **out of** three.
3. Motive: We spoke to them **out of** politeness.
4. Material: The bridge is made **out of** steel.
5. Beyond: **out of** control; **out of** danger.

Outside

1. On the outer side of: **outside** the house.
2. Beyond the limits of: **outside** my experience.

Over

1. Above; higher than: There are cupboards **over** the sink.
2. Covering: We spread an extra blanket **over** the bed.
3. Across: I jumped **over** a puddle.
4. More than: It costs **over** ten dollars; it took **over** an hour.
5. During: I saw him several times **over** the past week.
6. By means of: We made plans **over** the telephone.

Past

1. Up to and beyond: I walked **past** the house.
2. After (in time): It was **past** 2 o'clock; half **past** two.
3. Beyond: **past** belief.

Per

1. For each: 60 kilometres **per** hour; price **per** liter.

Plus

1. With the addition of: Six **plus** four equals ten.

Since

1. From a specific time in the past: had been waiting **since** two o'clock.
2. From a past time until now: I have been waiting here **since** noon.

Through

1. Across; from end to end of: the main road **through** town.
2. For the whole of a period: I slept **through** the night.
3. By means of: Skill improves **through** practice.

Throughout

1. In every part of: **throughout** the world.
2. For the whole of a period: **throughout** the winter.

Till

1. For the whole of a period, reaching the end: Keep this book **till** you finish it.

Note: **Till** can be used instead of **until**. However, at the beginning of a sentence, **until** is usually used.

To

1. In the direction of: Turn **to** the right.
2. Destination: I am going **to** Rome.
3. Until: From Monday **to** Friday; five minutes **to** ten; from 6 **to** 9.
4. Compared with: They prefer hockey **to** soccer.
5. With indirect object: Please give it **to** me.
6. As part of infinitive: I like **to** ski; he wants **to** help.
7. In order to: We went **to** the store **to** buy soap.

Toward (towards)

1. In the direction of: We walked **toward** the centre of the town.
2. Near; just before (time): It rained **towards** evening.

Under

1. Beneath: **under** the desk; **under** the trees.
2. Less than: **under** 100 people were present.
3. In circumstances of: **under** repair; **under** way; **under** discussion.

Underneath

1. Below, under: **underneath** the carpet.

Until

1. Up to a certain time: She will stay **until** Friday; **until** 5 p.m.

Up

1. To a higher place: We went **up** the stairs.
2. In a higher place: She lives **up** the hill.

Upon (on)

1. To rely **on (upon)** somebody.
2. Once **upon** a time...

Up to

1. As far as: **up to** now; I have read **up to** page 100.
2. Depending on: The decision is **up to** you.
3. As good as; ready for: His work is **up to** standard.

Versus

1. Against (sports, legal): The next game is England **versus** Australia.

Via

1. By way of: He went to Los Angeles **via** San Francisco.

With

1. Accompanying: He came **with** her. I have my keys **with** me.
2. Having; containing: Here is a book **with** a map of the island.
3. By means of; using: I repaired the shoes **with** glue.
4. Manner: **with** pleasure; **with** ease; **with** difficulty.
5. Because of: We were paralyzed **with** fear.
6. Material: The room was filled **with** smoke.

Within

1. Inside of: **within** twenty minutes; **within** one kilometer.

Without

1. Not having: Do not leave **without** your coat; **without** money.

Prepositions used in Idioms

At

- not **at** all: not in any way;
at all times: always;
at any rate: whatever happens;
keep someone **at** arm's length: avoid becoming closely involved with someone;
at close quarters: very near;
at one's disposal: to be used as one wishes;
at a distance: not near;
at fault: causing something wrong;
at first: at the beginning;
see **at** a glance: see immediately;
at hand: near; readily available;
at last: finally, after some delay;
at a loss: uncertain what to do or say;
at the mercy of: without defense against;
at the moment: now;
at once: immediately;
at present: now;
at rest: not moving;
at risk: threatened by danger or loss;
at short notice: with little warning (без предупреждения);

at stake: to be won or lost;
at a stretch: continuously;
at that rate: under those circumstances;
at this point: at this place; at this moment;
at the wheel: in control.

Behind

behind the scenes: (of persons) influencing events secretly; (in a theatre) behind the stage;
behind schedule: not on time.

Beside

be **beside oneself:** lose one's self-control;
beside the point: irrelevant.

Between

read **between the lines:** deduce a meaning that is not actually expressed.

Beyond

beyond help: unable to be helped;
beyond a joke: too annoying to be amusing;
beyond reproach: perfect; blameless.

By

by accident: not deliberately;
by all means: by any possible method;
by bit: gradually;
by chance: by accident; without planning;
by courtesy of: with the help or permission of;
win **by default:** win because of lack of competition;
by degrees: gradually;
perform **by ear:** perform (music) by listening to the sound, without referring to written music;
by hand: without the use of machinery;
by heart: from memory;
little **by little:** gradually;
by means of: by using;
by mistake: accidentally;
by no means: not at all;
one **by one:** one at a time;
by oneself: alone; on his own;
side **by side:** beside one another;
by the way: incidentally (used to introduce an unrelated topic of conversation);
by word of mouth: orally.

For

Once and **for all** – раз и навсегда;
for certain: definitely, without doubt;
for a change: for the sake of variety;

for example: as an illustration;
for fun: for the sake of enjoyment;
for good: permanently;
for good measure: in addition to the necessary amount;
for instance: for example, as an illustration;
for keeps: (colloquial) permanently;
for a living: as a profession;
for now: temporarily;
run **for** office: compete for an elected position;
for one thing: because of one reason (out of several);
for the sake of: for the benefit of, for the purpose of;
for sale: intended to be sold;
for sure: definitely (more colloquial than for certain);
food **for** thought: something which makes one think;
play **for** time: delay doing something in the hope that the situation will improve;
for the time being: until some other arrangement is made;
ask **for** trouble: act in a dangerous or foolish way;
for a while: for a period of time;
word **for** word: exactly as said or written.

From

from afar: from a distance;
from all sides: from all directions;
from head to foot: (of a person) completely, all over;
from scratch: from the beginning;
from time to time: occasionally;
a bolt **from** the blue: unexpectedly.

In

in addition to: as well as;
in advance: before;
be **in** agreement with: have the same opinion as;
in any case: whatever happens;
in brief: in a few words;
in bulk: (of goods) in large amounts; not in packages;
be **in** charge of: have responsibility for;
in common: shared by all members of a group;
in control: having the power to direct something;
in the course of: during;
in danger: likely to be harmed;
in a daze: unable to think clearly; confused;
in debt: owing money;
in demand: (of goods or persons) desired by many people;
in depth: (investigate something) thoroughly;
in detail: (explain something) thoroughly;
in disgrace: regarded with disapproval because of having done something wrong;
in the distance: far away;
in doubt: uncertain;
in duplicate: so that there are two identical copies (of a document);

in earnest: seriously; in a determined way;
in effect: (of rules) operating;
in the end: finally (At first...+ in the end...);
in fact: in reality; really;
in fashion: fashionable; accepted as being the most desirable and up to date;
in favour of: supporting (an idea);
in flames: burning, with visible flames;
in a flash: very quickly, suddenly;
in full: without omitting anything;
in general: usually; as a whole;
hand **in** hand: (of persons) holding hands; (of related situations) occurring together;
in a hurry: trying to accomplish something quickly;
in jest: as a joke;
in kind: (payment) in goods rather than in money;
in itself: without reference to anything else;
in league with: (of persons) joined together with (usually for a dishonest purpose);
in the limelight: be the focus of attention, receive great publicity;
in the long run: in the end, eventually;
in the long term: looking ahead to the distant future;
leave someone **in** the lurch: abandon someone who is in a difficult situation;
be **in** the minority: be in the smaller of two groups;
in mint condition: (of manufactured goods) perfect, brand-new;
in a minute: soon;
in a moment: soon, quickly;
set something **in** motion: start something going nip;
something **in** the bud: put an end to something before it gets properly started;
in no time: very soon, very quickly;
in order of: arranged according to;
in order to: for the purpose of;
in part: to some degree;
in particular: especially;
in power: (of a political party) holding office;
in practice: able to do something well because of recent practice;
in reality (opposite of in theory);
in print: (of a book) printed and available from the publisher;
in private: not in front of other people;
in public: openly; not in private;
in reality: really;
in reserve: saved for later use;
in retrospect: looking back over past events;
in return for: as repayment for;
be **in** the right: be correct;
in season: (of fruit or vegetables) readily available at that time of year;
in a second: soon; quickly;
in short supply: scarce; not easily obtainable;
in sight: able to be seen;
in stock: (of goods at a store) present and available;
in that case: if that is true;
in theory: ideally; according to theoretical considerations;
be **in** time: not be late;

in touch with: in communication with, informed about;
in triplicate: so that there are three identical copies (of a document);
be **in** trouble: be in a difficult situation; be blamed or punished for doing something wrong;
in tune: at the correct pitch;
act **in** unison: act together;
in vain: without success;
in the vicinity of: near;
once **in** a while: occasionally;
in words of one syllable: (explain something) clearly and simply;
in working order: able to function properly;
in the wrong: responsible for an error, guilty.

Inside

inside out: with the inner side out; thoroughly;

Into

paint oneself **into** a corner: take a course of action which greatly narrows one's future choices of action;
go **into** hiding: hide oneself;
get **into** a rut: get into a fixed and uninteresting way of life;
get **into** trouble: get into a difficult situation; do something deserving blame or punishment.

Of

of course: certainly, as one would expect; as everyone knows;
hard **of** hearing: somewhat deaf;
next **of** kin: nearest relative or relatives;
of one's own accord: voluntarily, on one's own initiative;
of one's own free will: voluntarily, by choice;
one's point **of** view: one's opinion about something;
right **of** way: public right to use a path or road; (of road traffic) right to proceed before others;
rule **of** thumb: a simple way to calculate what procedure to follow, based on extensive experience, rather than on theoretical considerations.

Off

go **off** the air: (of radio or television) stop broadcasting;
off duty: not engaged in one's regular work;
off one's hands: no longer one's responsibility;
off and on: from time to time;
off the record: say something privately, that is not to be officially recorded;
off the track: following a wrong line of thought or action.

On

on account of: because of;
be **on** the air: (of radio or television) be in the process of broadcasting;
on the alert: ready to act;
be **on** all fours: (of a person) be on hands and knees;
on the average: usually; normally;

on behalf of: for; in the interests of;
on board: on a ship or airplane;
on business: as part of one's work;
on condition that: only if; provided that;
on demand: when asked for;
on display: being exhibited;
on duty: engaged in one's regular work;
on fire: burning;
to go **on** foot: to walk;
be **on** one's guard: be alert and ready to meet an attack;
on hand: available;
on loan: lent and not yet returned;
shoot **on** location: (of a movie) film in natural surroundings, not in a studio;
on the lookout: watchful;
put something **on** the map: cause something to become well-known;
get **on** one's nerves: annoy; irritate;
on no account: absolutely not;
on the one hand: (used to introduce one side of an argument);
on the other hand: (used to introduce a contrasting side of an argument);
on one's own: alone; without help;
act **on** one's own initiative: act independently, without orders from anyone else;
on order: requested but not yet delivered;
act **on** principle: do something to support a policy;
on purpose: deliberately;
go **on** record: say something which is to be officially recorded;
on sale: being sold at a lower price than usual;
on schedule: at the correct time, as planned or predicted (on time);
on second thoughts: after thinking further about something;
on a shoestring: with a very small amount of money;
be **on** the spot: be where important events are taking place; be placed in an awkward situation;
on the spur of the moment: on a sudden impulse;
go off **on** a tangent: change suddenly to a new line of thought or action (странно себя повести);
on time: at the correct time;
walk **on** tiptoe: walk on the toes and balls of the feet;
accept something **on** trust: accept something without proof;
on the verge of: very close to, about to;
on the whole: taking everything into consideration.

Out of

out of the blue: unexpectedly;
out of breath: (after running) panting from a shortage of oxygen (часто и тяжело дышать);
out of character: unlike a person's known character;
out of control: not able to be regulated or guided;
out of danger: safe;
out of date: no longer used; old-fashioned; (of news) no longer true;
out of debt: having paid one's debts;
be **out** of one's depth: be unable to handle a situation because of lack of experience;
out of doors: in the open air; not in a building;

out of fashion: not fashionable; not presently in common use;
out of hand: not under control;
out of harm's way: safe;
out of line with: in disagreement with;
be **out** of one's mind: be insane;
out of order: not functioning properly; (at a formal meeting) not behaving according to the rules;
out of the ordinary: unusual;
out of place: unsuitable;
out of practice: unable to do something because of lack of recent practice;
out of print: (of a book) no longer available from the publisher;
out of proportion: too big or too small; not having the appropriate relationship to something;
out of the question: impossible; not to be considered;
out of season: (of fruit or vegetables) not readily available at that time of year;
out of shape: (of persons) not in top condition because of lack of exercise;
out of sight: hidden, not able to be seen;
out of stock: (of goods at a store) temporarily unavailable;
out of style: not fashionable;
out of touch: not in communication with; not informed about;
out of town: having temporarily left town;
out of trouble: not in trouble;
out of tune: not at the correct pitch;
out of work: no longer having employment.

To

to all intents and purposes: in all important ways;
to a certain extent: partly;
to date: so far; until now;
up **to** date: current, modern;
see eye **to** eye with: agree entirely with;
take something **to** heart: be much affected by something made;
to measure: exactly suitable; (of clothes) made for a certain person;
keep something **to** oneself: not tell anyone;
to the point: relevant.

Under

under age: below the age of being legally permitted to do something;
be **under** arrest: be held prisoner and charged with wrong doing;
under the auspices of: with the patronage of; supported by (под покровительством);
under one's breath: in a whisper;
under the circumstances: because this is true;
under consideration: being thought about;
under control: able to be regulated or guided;
under cover of: protected by; undetected because of;
under fire: being shot at; being criticized;
under the impression that: having the idea that;
be **under** the influence of: be affected by;
be **under** oath: have sworn to tell the truth;

under observation: being watched carefully;
under restraint (ограничение): prevented from doing something.

Up

have something **up** one's sleeve: have a secret idea or plan in reserve.

With

with impunity: without risk of injury or punishment (безнаказанно);
with the naked eye: without using a magnifying lens;
with no strings attached: (of help given) with no conditions; to be used freely;
 take **with** a pinch of salt: not believe completely;
with regard to: concerning; about;
with respect to: concerning;
with the same brush: having the same faults;
with a vengeance (месть): very much; more than usual (с лихвой).

Within

within limits: to a certain extent; not too much;
within living memory: within the memory of people now alive.

Without

go **without** saying: be obvious.

Appendix 2

Verbs, Adjectives, Nouns with Prepositions

abide by	твёрдо держаться, придерживаться чего-либо
absent from (adj)	отсутствовать
absent oneself from sth (v)	уклоняться от чего-либо; отсутствовать
abstain from	воздерживаться от
accompanied by	в сопровождении
account for	объяснять; отчитываться за
accuse sb of (doing) sth (v)	обвинять кого-либо в чем-либо
accustomed to doing sth	привыкать
according to	согласно
in accordance with	в соответствии с
acquainted with	знаком с
addicted to	пристраститься к
adequate for	подходящий для чем-либо
adjacent to	примыкающий, смежный
advantage of doing sth (n)	преимущество в чем-либо
There is an advantage in (to have an advantage over sb)	
afraid of sb/sth (adj)	бояться кого-либо, чего-либо
agree with sb	соглашаться с кем-либо

agree to sth	соглашаться с чем-либо
agree on everything	соглашаться во всем
ahead of	впереди
aim at sb/sth (v)	целиться в, нацелиться на
allergic to	аллергия на
allow for	предусматривать, учитывать, делать поправку; принимать во внимание
amazed at/by sth (adj)	быть пораженным чем-либо
amount to	составлять
amused at/with	развлекаться
angry with sb for doing sth (adj)	злиться на кого-либо за что-либо
angry with sb about sth	
angry at what sb does	
annoyed about sth (adj)	быть раздраженным чем-либо
annoyed with sb for doing sth	раздражать кого-либо чем-либо
answer back	дерзить, грубить, огрызаться; ответить ударом на удар
(in) answer to	в ответ на
anxious about sth	беспокоиться о
apologise to sb for doing sth (v)	извиняться перед кем-либо за что-либо
(make an) appeal to sb for sth	просить кого-либо о чем-либо
apply to sb for sth (v)	обращаться к кому-либо за чем-либо
approve of	одобрять
arrive at (a small place)	прибывать
arrive home (v)	приехать домой
arrive in (a big place) (v)	прибывать
ask after	осведомляться
ask around	расспрашивать
ask sb a question (v)	задать кому-либо вопрос
ask sb for sth	спросить кого-либо о чем-либо,
ask for	просить; справляться о ком-либо; хотеть видеть кого-либо
ask in	приглашать кого-либо войти в дом
ask out	приглашать
ask over/ round	приглашать в гости
associate with sb (v)	общаться с кем-либо
astonished at/by sth (adj)	быть пораженным чем-либо или в чем-либо
attitude towards/to (n)	относиться к кому-либо
avail oneself of sth	воспользоваться чем-либо (of his position)
aware of sth (adj)	сознавать что-либо
bad at sth (adj)	не успевать в каком-либо деле (But: <i>He was very bad to me.</i>)
base on	основываться на
basis for	основание для
be about to	собираться что-либо сделать; быть побли- зости
be after	преследовать

be against	быть против
be at	намереваться делать что-либо
be away	отсутствовать, быть в отъезде
be back	вернуться
be down	быть внизу; быть в столице, в провинции, на периферии
be down with (go down with)	заболеть; спускаться
be for	стоять, быть за что-либо
be in for	ожидать
be in	быть дома, на работе, в помещении
be off	отсутствовать; уходить, отправляться; быть свободным от работы; быть отмененным, аннулированным (не состояться); быть отключенным; ошибиться, просчитаться.
be on	демонстрироваться по TV (в кино, театре); быть включенным, зажженным; происходить
be out	не быть дома, на работе; погаснуть, быть выключенным; раскрываться, стать известным; выйти из печати; испытывать недостаток
be out of fashion	быть не в моде
be over	окончиться, завершиться
be through (with)	кончать что-либо; покончить с кем-либо, чем-либо
be up	встать, проснуться, быть на ногах, бодрствовать; допоздна не ложиться спать; подниматься, быть поднятым, быть в центре, в столице, в городе; подняться, достигнуть высокого положения; истекать, заканчиваться, прекратиться; случаться, происходить
be up to	быть пригодным для чего-либо; заниматься чем-либо; подходить; быть на уровне
be demand from (n)	требовать от кого-либо
believe in sth (v)	верить во что-либо
belong to sb (v)	принадлежать кому-либо
be told about (hear from) (v)	слышать о ком-либо (получать письма от)
be with	поддерживать кого-либо; понимать; следовать за тем, что говорят; работать у кого-либо, где-либо
beg for (help)	просить, умолять (о помощи)
to begin with	во-первых, прежде всего; начинаться с чего-либо
benefit from sth	извлекать пользу, выгоду из чего-либо
bet on (against)	держаться пари за (против)
beware of	остерегаться
(put the) blame on sb/sth (n)	возложить ответственность
blame sb for sth (v)	винить кого-либо за что-либо
blame sth on sb	возлагать вину за что-либо на кого-либо

blow up	взрывать(ся)
boast about/of	хвастаться чем-либо
boil away	выкипеть
bored with/ofsth (adj)	надоедать чем-либо
borrow sth from sb (v)	одалживать что-либо у кого-либо
branch out	расширить дело
break down	сломаться, испортиться (о машине); расстраиваться (о человеке); сдавать (о здоровье); потерять самообладание
break in	вламываться
break into	вламываться, вторгаться; прерывать (разговор)
break off	разойтись, порвать связи, расстаться
break out	неожиданно начаться; вспыхивать; вырваться; убежать
break through	продвигаться вперед, прорываться через (сквозь)
break bad news to sb	сообщить плохие новости кому-либо
break up	расходиться, распадаться, разваливаться; распускать на каникулы
break with	порывать отношения с кем-либо
bump into	наталкиваться, налетать на что-либо; ударяться
brilliant at doing sth (adj)	быть ярким в чем-либо
bring about	вызывать (приносить) изменения; быть причиной
bring back	возвращать; напоминать
bring down	свергать
bring forward	переносить вперед
bring in	приносить
bring on	быть причиной
bring out	опубликовывать, издавать
bring round (to)	приводить в чувства
bring up	выращивать, воспитывать; выносить на обсуждение
brush up	освежать знания
build up	нагнетать, нарастать, укреплять
bump into sb/sth (v)	столкнуться с кем-либо, чем-либо
buy for	купить за
busy with (in, about) (to be busy doing sth)	заниматься чем-либо
call at	заходить куда-либо
call back	перезвонить
call for (= demand)	требовать; заходить за кем-либо, забрать его с собой; взывать к
call in	заходить, забегать к кому-либо; вызывать (to call in a plumber)

call off	отменять
call on sb	заходить к кому-либо
call out	объявлять громко, выкрикивать; просить помощи
call round/call over	заходить, навещать, посещать
call up	звонить по телефону; призывать в армию
campaign against/for	вести кампанию
(in) capable of sth (adj)	(не)способен к чему-либо
not to care about sth (v)	быть безразличным к чему-либо
care for (of, about) sb (v)	заботиться о ком-либо, ухаживать за кем-либо
care for (<i>I don't care for...</i> – мне не нравится...) (<i>I don't care a fig</i> – мне наплевать)	интересоваться, любить что-либо; питать любовь, интерес к чему-либо
(to take) care of	заботиться о ком-либо, заниматься
careful of	заботиться о
careless about (of, in)	беспечный, не думающий о чем-либо
be/get carried away	увлечься чем-либо
carry off	справляться с трудностями
carry on (with)	продолжать что-либо делать
carry out	доводить до конца, завершать, выполнять
carry through	успешно заканчивать
catch up on(catch up with sb): <i>He lagged behind the group with his English. Now he has to catch up with the group with his English.</i>	догнать кого-либо; нагнать
cater for	обслуживать, кормить
cater for the best public	обслуживать избранную публику
cause of (n)	быть причиной чего-либо
certain of	быть уверенным в
to change smth for smth (v)	менять что-либо на что-либо
change into	превращать в
charge sb for (ask sb to pay) (v)	просить плату
charge sb with sth (accuse sb of) (v) (<i>He was charged with murdering his wife</i>)	обвинять ког-либо в чем-либо
to be in charge of sth	руководить чем-либо
check in	регистрировать(ся), записывать
check out	отметиться по окончании рабочего дня; расплатиться в гостинице и уехать
cheer up	ободрять, поддерживать, утешать
cheque (check) for \$100(n) (to pay by cheque), (to pay in cash)	чек на \$100 (оплачивать чеком), (оплачивать наличными)
choice between/of	выбор
chop up	рубить, крошить, нарезать, шинковать
clean out	очищать
clean up	убирать

clear away	убирать (часто со стола); рассеиваться (о тумане, тучах)
clear off	закончить (недоделанную работу); уходить; проясниться (о погоде); избавиться (от тревог, забот)
clear out	очищать, убирать; уехать внезапно
clear up	выяснять, разрешать, улаживать; проясняться (о погоде); привести в порядок
clever at sth	быть умным в чем-либо
clever of sb to do sth (adj) It was very clever of you to buy it.	быть умным в чем-либо
close down	закрывать, прекращать работу, ликвидировать, закрываться, ликвидироваться
close to	близкий к
coax into	уговорить
coax sb out of his money	выманить у кого-либо деньги
coincide with	совпадать, соответствовать
collaborate with	сотрудничать с
collide with to come into collision.	столкнуться с, вступить в противоречие
come from (v)	приехать
come across (to run into sb)	случайно встретить кого-либо
come along (with us)!	Пошли с нами!
come on/ along!	Ну-ка! Ну давай!
come back	возвращаться
come by	получить
come down	приезжать из столицы (центра) в провинцию, из университета домой
come down to	получить в наследство
come (go) down with	заболеть
come for	заходить за кем-либо/чем-либо
come in, come into	входить куда-либо
come into	унаследовать
come out	выходить, выходить из печати, обнаруживаться, становиться известным
come over/round	зайти ненадолго, заглянуть (в гости)
come off	удаваться
come out	цвести; быть изданным; удалять (о пятнах)
come round (to)	посещать, навещать; прийти в сознание
come to	достигать суммы (быть равным сумме)
come up	упоминаться; появляться
come up to	приближаться; соответствовать
come up with	находить решение
to have smth in common <i>It is more common in children.</i>	иметь что-либо общее <i>Это присуще детям.</i>
comment on	комментировать

communicate with	общаться с
compare sth/sb to sth/sb else (v)	сравнивать, уподоблять
compare sth/sb with sth/sb else	сравнивать, проводить параллель, сличать
comparison between	сравнение между
complain to sb about sth/sb (v)	жаловаться кому-либо на что-либо
complain of (<i>She complained to me of a headache.</i>)	жаловаться
compliment sb on sth	хвалить кого-либо за что-либо
comply with (the rules)	подчиняться правилам
comply with sb's request	исполнить чью-либо просьбу
conceal sth from sb	утаивать
concentrate on sth (v)	сконцентрироваться на чем-либо
confide in sb	доверять кому-либо
confidence in	доверие к кому-либо
confident of	быть уверенным
confine to	ограничивать, придерживаться чего-либо
confusion over	замешательство
congratulate sb on (doing) sth (v)	поздравить кого-либо с чем-либо
connection between two things	связь между двумя вещами
(in)connection with sb/sth	в связи с
connect to/with	соединять, связывать
conscious of sth (adj)	осознавать что-либо
consist of sth (v)	состоять из
contact between two things (n)	связь между двумя вещами
(in)contact with sb/sth	связываться с
content with	довольствоваться
contrary to	против, вопреки
contrast with	сопоставлять, сравнивать
contribute to	жертвовать, делать вклад
convert into/to (v)	превращать что-либо во что-либо
cope with	справляться с
correspond to/with	соответствовать, отвечать, равняться
count for	иметь значение
count in	включать
count off	отсчитывать, рассчитывать по порядку номеров
count on/upon	рассчитывать на кого-либо
count out	исключать
covered with	покрытый чем-либо
crash into sb/sth (v)	врезаться во что-либо
(have) a craving for	иметь страстное желание (стремление) к
crowded with (adj)	наполненный чем-либо
crazy about	помешанный на чем-либо, сильно увлеченный чем-либо
cruel to sb/sth (adj)	быть жестоким к кому-либо
cruelty towards/to (n)	обращаться жестоко к кому-либо
cure for	лекарство от

curious about	любопытный, любознательный
cut across	срезать (путь)
cut back (on)	уменьшать (сокращать)
cut down	рубить
cut down (on)	сокращать потребление чего-либо, урезывать
cut in	подрезать (об автомобиле); вмешиваться
cut into	вмешиваться
cut off	разъединять, отключать; изолировать, отрезать (местность)
cut out to be cut out for sth	вырезать, кроить; оттеснить, превзойти; быть словно созданным для...
be cut out for/to be	подходить
cut up	измельчать, рубить на куски; раскритиковать, причинять страдания
cut sb dead	сделать вид, что не заметил
damage to (n)	наносить вред
date back to (v)	относиться к
date from (v)	относиться к (периоду), начинаться с какой-либо даты
deal with (v)	заключать сделку с кем-либо; иметь дело с кем-либо (<i>He is hard to deal with</i>)
dear to (adj)	дорогой, милый, любимый
decide on/against (v)	останавливаться на чем-либо
decrease in (n)	уменьшение
dedicate to (devote to) (v)	посвящать
deficient in	лишенный чего-либо, недостаточный
devote to	посвящать
definition of (n)	определение
delay in	задержка, перенос
delight in (v)	находить удовольствие в
delighted with (adj)	быть в восторге
demand for (n)	спрос на
be in demand	пользоваться спросом
demand from	требовать от кого-либо
depart from (v)	отклоняться от
departure from (n)	отклонение от; отъезд
depend on/upon sb for sth (v)	зависеть от кого-либо в чем-либо
dependent on (adj)	зависимость от
deprive smb of smth	лишать кого-либо чего-либо, отнимать
deputize for	представлять кого-либо
descend from father to son	переходить от отца к сыну
describe sb/sth to sb else (v)	описывать
description of (n)	описание чего-либо
desire sth (to be desperate for sth)	желать чего-либо
die in an accident (v)	умирать в автокатастрофе
die of (an illness)(v)	умирать от болезни

die from (hunger, cold)	умирать от внешних воздействий
differ from (v)	отличаться от
difference between/of (n)	различия между
different from (adj)	отличаться
difficulty in/with (n)	испытывать затруднения в
dig in (into)	навалиться, наброситься
disadvantage in doing sth	недостаток в чем-либо
disadvantage of (n)	недостаток чего-либо
disagree with (v)	не согласиться с
disappointed with/about (adj)	быть разочарованным чем-либо
disapprove of (v)	не одобрять
discharge sb from (v)	выделять; увольнять
discouraged from (adj)	отговаривать от чего-либо
discussion about/on (n)	обсуждение
disgusted by/at (adj)	чувствовать отвращение
dish out (dish up)	раздавать, подавать (подавать на стол)
dismiss from (v)	уволить
dispose of (v)	избавляться от
disqualified from (adj)	лишить кого-либо права на что-либо
dissatisfied with (adj)	быть недовольным
distinguish between (v)	проводить различие
divide between/among (v)	делить
divide into/by (v)	делить на
do sth about (v)	делать что-либо с чем-либо
do away with	отменять; избавляться; упразднить
do down	плохо говорить о ком-либо
do sb in	погубить, убить
do up	застегивать; ремонтировать
do with	хотеть (не мешало бы...); обойтись чем-либо
do without	обходиться без чего-либо
doubtful about (adj)	сомневаться насчет чего-либо
draw (pull) back from	отказываться; отодвигаться прочь
draw (pull) in	прибывать (на станцию)
draw out	вытаскивать, выводить (войска)
draw up	останавливаться (о транспортном средстве); составлять (завещание, контракт)
dream about sth (to desire sth) (v)	мечтать о чем-либо
dream of (n)	мечта о чем-либо
dressed in (adj)	одеваться во что-либо (dressed up – разодетый)
drive away/off	уезжать, отъезжать
drive on	продолжать путь
drop in on smb. (drop in at sb's place)	заходить, заглядывать к
drop off	высаживать
drop out	бросать, оставлять
drop round	заходить, заглядывать
eager for (adj)	жаждать чего-либо; любить

eat in	питаться, столоваться дома
eat out	питаться, столоваться вне дома
economize on	экономить на
efficient at (adj)	быть эффективным в чем-либо
(put) effort into sth (n)	прикладывать усилие на что-либо
emphasis on (n)	подчеркнуть что-либо
end up	плохо или неожиданно для себя кончить
at the end	в конце
in the end	в конце (впоследствии) (после “at first...”)
engaged in sth (adj)	заниматься чем-либо
engaged to sb	обрученный, помолвленный
engagement to sb	договор с кем-либо; помолвка
ensure (insure) against smth	страховаться от
enter for	принимать участие, участвовать
enter (into)	входить, вступать, являться..., разделять
enthusiastic about (adj)	быть полным энтузиазма по поводу чего-либо
envious of (adj)	завидовать
equal to (adj)	сравниваться, быть равным
escape from/to (v)	избегать (прибегать)
example of (n)	пример чего-либо
excellent at	отличный в
exception to (n)	исключение из
exchange sth for sth else (v)	обменивать(ся) что-либо на что-либо
excited about (adj)	волноваться о чем-либо
exclaim at (v)	восклицать
excuse for (n)	извинять, прощать за что-либо
excuse sb for (v)	извинять, прощать за что-либо
exempt from (taxation)	освободить от (налогов); изымать
expect sth (to wait for sth)	ожидать, ждать
expel from (v)	исключать из
experienced in (adj)	быть опытным в чем-либо
experiment on/with (v)	экспериментировать с
expert at/in (sth/doing sth) (adj)	быть специалистом в чем-либо
expert at/in (sth/doing sth) (n)	быть специалистом в чем-либо
expert on (n) expert with sth(n)	эксперт по чему-либо
face sth	стоять (сталкиваться) лицом к лицу
face up to (phr v)	смотреть смело, без страха
fail in an attempt (v)	проваливаться
fail to do sth (v)	не смочь
failure in (an exam) (n)	неудача в чем-либо
failure to (do sth) (n)	неудача в чем-либо
faithful to	верный, преданный
fall apart	распадаться, рассыпаться (на части)
fall back on	обратиться к кому-либо за поддержкой; полагаться на
fall (lag) behind sb with sth	отставать

fall down	падать
fall for sb	увлечься, понравиться, влюбиться
fall in	разваливаться
fall in with	соглашаться (с кем-либо) (to fall in love with sb)
fall into	относиться
fall off	ухудшаться, приходить в упадок
fall on	атаковать, нападать
fall out (with)	ссориться
fall over	опрокидываться, падать
fall through	провалиться (о планах), потерпеть неудачу
familiar with (= have knowledge of) (adj)	быть схожим с
familiar to me	знаком мне
famous for (adj)	быть известным
fed up with (adj)	пресытиться
fill in/up/out (the form) in ink (in block letters)	заполнять (бланк)
fill sth with sth else (v)	быть наполненным чем-либо
find out	разузнуть, выяснить
find similarities and differences (v)	находить отличия и сходства
finish with (v)	заканчивать
fire at (v)	стрелять
fit in	включить, назначить
flare up	вывести из себя, вскипеть; вспыхивать (о фарах)
flee from	убегать
fond of (adj)	любить, нравиться
forget about (v)	забывать о чем-либо или о ком-либо
forgive sb for (v)	прощать
fortunate in (adj)	вести в чем-либо
friendly with/to/towards (adj)	быть дружным с
frightened of (adj)	быть испуганным
full of (adj)	быть полным
furious with sb about/at sth (adj)	сердиться на кого-либо за что-либо
generosity to/towards sb in sth (n)	щедрость к кому-либо
genius for/to/at	быть гениальным в чем-либо
get across	доступно передавать кому-либо идеи; четко, убедительно объяснять, изложить, донести, довести
get along/on (<i>How are you getting on?</i>)	обходиться; ладить; преуспевать (<i>Как Вы проживаете?</i>)
get along with	ладить
get at	подразумевать, значить; иметь в виду
get away	удрать, ускользнуть, улизнуть, выбираться, уходить, уезжать
get away with	избегать наказания; избавляться от чего-либо
get back	возвращать; вернуться, получить назад

get by	жить, прожить, обходиться
get down	спускаться; снять; подавлять, угнетать
get down to	всерьез приняться за что-либо
get in (into)	входить, влезать; садиться в машину
get off	выходить (из дома, автобуса), слезать, вылезать, сходить
get on	садиться, входить (в автобус); делать успехи
get on with	быть в хороших отношениях
get out	выходить, вылезать, высаживаться; вынимать, вытаскивать; совершить побег
get out of	отвертеться, отлынивать, увилить; выходить из (машины, комнаты)
get over	пережить, преодолеть; выздороветь
get rid of sth	избавиться от
get sb round	убедить кого-либо, уговорить
get round to	найти время делать что-либо
get through	заканчивать, выживать
get (put) through to	связываться по телефону
get to	попадать, прибывать куда-либо, добираться до места
get up	вставать, подниматься
gift for	способность к
gift of pleasing	способность завоевывать симпатию
give away	выдавать, предавать; раздавать, распределять; подвести; проговориться
give back	возвращать
give in	сдаваться, уступать; подавать, вручать
give off	издавать (запах), испускать
give out	заканчиваться; раздавать, распределять
give up	бросать; сдаваться; оставить
glance at (v) (at a glance; at first sight)	взглянуть
glare at (v)	пристально смотреть
go about/go (a)round	ходить, гулять
go after	преследовать
go straight ahead	двигаться вперед, продолжать
go away	уходить, уезжать
go back	возвращаться
go back on	не сдерживать слова
go by	проходить мимо; судить по, руководствоваться чем-либо
go down (to)	уезжать (из столицы, за город, из города в деревню), падать, снижаться, утихать
go down with	болеть чем-либо
go for	нападать; наниматься на работу
go in for	заниматься, увлекаться; принять участие в чем-либо

go off	взорваться, выстрелить; уходить, уезжать; портиться (о продуктах)
go on	продолжать, идти дальше; происходить, случаться; набрасываться, бранить кого-либо
go out	гаснуть (об огне); выходить, бывать в обществе
go over	проверять детали (какого-либо события), повторять
go round	обходить, распространяться (о новостях)
go through	просматривать, изучать в деталях; испытывать, переживать; проделать
go up to	приближаться, подходить, ездить в столицу с периферии, из деревни в город
go up	поднимать (цены)
go with	подходить, соответствовать, гармонировать
go without	обходиться без чего-либо
good relationship with sb	хорошие взаимоотношения с кем-либо
good at sth (adj)	преуспевать в чем-либо
good at using sth	преуспевать в чем-либо
good to smb	хорошо относиться к
grateful to sb for sth	быть благодарным кому-либо за что-либо
grow out of	перерастать, выходить за рамки, размеры, границы; отвыкать от чего-либо с возрастом или с течением времени
grow up	вырастать, становиться взрослым
grudge against sb	иметь зуб против кого-либо; испытывать недоброе чувство; завидовать
guess at (v)	догадка о чем-либо
guilty of (adj) (But: <i>He felt guilty about his crime.</i>)	быть виновным
hand in	вручать, подавать; сдавать (письменную работу)
hand over	передавать
hand round	раздавать
hang around/about	околачиваться, слоняться, бездельничать
hang on	ожидать
hang out	высовываться; вывешивать; околачиваться («тусоваться»)
hang up	положить телефонную трубку, прекратить телефонный разговор
happen to (v)	случаться с кем-либо, чем-либо
happy about/with (adj)	быть счастливым по поводу чего-либо
harmful to (adj)	быть вредным кому-либо
head for (make for)	направляться, держать курс
he was very good to me	хорошо относиться к кому-либо
hear about (v) (be told)	слышать о

hear from sb (v)	получать письма от кого-либо
hear of (v) (learn that sth or sb exists)	слышать о чем-либо или о ком-либо
heir to (n)	быть наследником
<i>Help yourself to tea!</i>	<i>Угощайтесь чаем!</i>
hinder sb from doing sth	мешать
hint at sth	намекать на что-либо
hint to sb about sth (v)	намекать кому-либо на что-либо
hold back	контролировать, сдерживать; колебаться
hold in	сдерживаться
hold off	держаться на расстоянии
hold on	ожидать (не вешать тел. трубку); держаться
hold out	длиться; настаивать на чем-либо
hold to	придерживаться
hold up	задерживать, захватывать; нападать, грабить
hope for (v)	надеяться на
hope to do sth (v)	надеяться сделать что-либо
hope of	надежда на
hopeless at (adj)	безнадежно
idea of (n)	идея чего-либо
identical to (adj)	быть одинаковым
ignorant of/ about (adj)	быть неосведомленным
ill with (adj)	болеть чем-либо
impact on (n)	воздействие на
impressed by/with (adj)	производить впечатление на кого-либо чем-либо
(make an) impression on sb	производить впечатление на кого-либо чем-либо
for improvement in/on (n)	вносить улучшения в
incapable of (adj)	неспособный на что-либо
include in (v)	включать во что-либо
increase in (n)	увеличение в чем-либо, возрастание, рост
to be on the increase	возрастать, увеличиваться
an increase by 10%	увеличение на 10%
independent of (adj)	не зависеть от
indifferent to (adj)	быть безразличным к
indulge in (<i>To indulge oneself with a cigar.</i>)	доставить себе удовольствие, не отказать себе в чем-либо (<i>С удовольствием выкурить сигару.</i>)
inferior to (adj)	подчиняться кому-либо
information about/on (n)	информация о чем-либо /по чему-либо
(be) informed about (adj)	быть информированным
insist on sth/doing sth	настаивать на
insure (ensure) against smth (v)	страховать от
intent on (adj)	сосредоточенный на чем-либо
(have no) intention of (n)	(не) иметь намерения
interest in (n)	интересоваться чем-либо

interested in (adj)	интересоваться
interfere with sb in sth (v) (Stop interfering with me in my affairs!)	вмешиваться во что-либо
invasion of (n)	вторгаться, вмешиваться
invest in (v)	инвестировать
invitation to (n)	приглашение кому-либо
invite sb to (v)	приглашать кого-либо к кому-либо
involve in (v)	вовлекать во что-либо
irritated by (adj)	быть раздраженным чем-либо
irrespective of	несмотря на
jealous of sb for doing sth (adj)	ревновать к (<i>He was jealous of me for winning Ann.</i>)
join in (v)	соединяться в, объединяться
joke about (v)	шутить насчет чего-либо
keen on sth (adj)	очень хотеть, очень любить, увлекаться чем-либо
keen to do sth (adj)	очень хотеть
keep after	преследовать
keep away (from)	держаться в отдалении, не находиться вблизи
keep back	сдерживать; держаться сзади, в стороне, в отдалении
keep down	снижать (цены)
keep in	держать кого-либо в помещении
keep off	не приближаться, держаться вдали
keep on	продолжать настойчиво делать что-либо
keep out	не входить
keep up (with)	продолжать делать что-либо; быть в курсе чего-либо
key to (n)	ключ к чему-либо
kind to (adj)	быть добрым к кому-либо
keep sb from doing sth (to prevent)	мешать, препятствовать, делать что-либо
keep to	придерживаться, не отклоняться
kiss sb on the cheek (on the forehead), etc	поцеловать кого-либо в щеку (в лоб) и т.д.
knock at/on (v)	стучать
knock down	сбить (с ног), свалить; ломать, разрушать
knock off	сбивать, сшибать
knock out	нокаутировать
know about/of (v)	знать о чем-либо
a good knowledge of English (n)	хорошие знания английского языка
lack in (v)	недостаток в чем-либо
lack of (n)	недостаток чего-либо
lag (fall) behind the group with English	отстать от группы по английскому языку
laugh at (v)	смеяться над кем-либо, чем-либо
lean on/against (v)	прислоняться, опираться на

leave for (v) (= head for)	уезжать в... (<i>He left Minsk for London.</i>)
leave out	пропускать, не включать
live at 10, Downing street	жить в доме №...
live off	жить за чей-либо счет, жить с чего-либо, питаться
live on	жить на..., питаться чем-либо
live up to	жить согласно
lend sth to sb (v)	одалживать что-либо кому-либо
let down	подвести, покинуть в беде; опускаться, спускаться вниз
let in (to)	впустить в
let off	не наказывать
let on	выдавать секрет
let out	выпустить, отпустить
let up	ослабевать
listen to (v)	слушать
live on (v) (bread)	продолжать жить; питаться (хлебом)
long for (v)	жаждать чего-либо, страстно желать, стремиться
look ahead	смотреть вперед, предвидеть; проявлять предусмотрительность
look at (v)	смотреть на
look for (= search for) (v)	искать
look after (phr v) (= take care of)	заботиться
look back (on)	оглядываться, вспоминать
look down on	смотреть свысока, с презрением
look up to	уважать, смотреть почтительно
look forward to doing sth	с нетерпением ждать чего-либо, предвкушать
look in on sb	зайти, заглянуть
look into	проводить расследование, детально исследовать
look on	наблюдать за
Look out! (Watch out!)	Берегись!
look out on (onto)	выходить, быть обращенным
look (out) for	искать
look over	изучать, осмотреть; просмотреть
look (a)round	осматривать; оглядываться кругом
look through	просмотреть, пробежать
look up	посмотреть (в книге, в словаре), искать, наводить справки; поднимать глаза
to make a fuss over	суесться
make off	убегать, удирает
make up one's mind	решить, принять решение
make up to	заискивать перед кем-либо
make up to smb for smth make up for the difference	компенсировать, возмещать, искупать вину, компенсировать разницу в цене
make (no) mention of sb	(не) упоминать о ком-либо

to be married to smb	быть замужем за
to marry sb	жениться на ком-либо
mean to (adj)	быть жадным по отношению к
mean by	подразумевать, иметь в виду
meet up	встретиться
to be on the mend	идти на поправку
mention smth to smb (v)	упомянуть кому-то о чем-то
be made for	подходить для (чего-либо)
make for	идти к
make out	различать, разбирать; выписывать (чек); делать вид, притворяться
make over	передавать в наследство
make up	изготавливать, изобретать; делать макияж; уладить (спор)
make up to smb	заискивать перед кем-либо
make up to smb for smth	компенсировать, возмещать; искупить вину
make up one's mind	решить, принимать решение
to make (no) mention of smb	(не) упоминать кого-либо
mistake sb for (v) (<i>I mistook you for my brother.</i>)	принимать кого-либо за другого
mix in	ввязаться в драку
mix in (the best) society	вращаться в (высшем) обществе (в свете)
mix up	спутать, перепутать; перемешивать
mix with (v)	смешивать, мешать с; общаться
be mixed up in (with) sth	быть замешанным в чем-либо
move in	въезжать
move off	уходить, уезжать, отъезжать
move on	идти дальше, продолжать движение
move out	съезжать
name after (v)	называть в честь кого-либо
necessary for (adj)	необходимый
need for (n)	нужда в чем-либо
to be in need of smth	нуждаться
neglect of (n)	невнимание к , пренебрежение
nervous about (adj)	нервничать по поводу чего-либо
to be new to smb (adj)	быть новым для кого-либо
nice to (adj)	симпатизировать, хорошо относиться к кому-либо
<i>It is nice of you to come!</i>	<i>Как хорошо, что Вы пришли!</i>
nominate sb as a candidate for	выставлять кандидатуру; называть, объявлять
(take) (no) notice of	не обращать внимание на
notorious for doing sth (adj)	быть печально известным чем-либо
obedient to (adj)	слушаться; быть покорным
object to (v)	возражать, протестовать
objection to (n)	иметь возражения
obliged to sb for sth (adj)	обязывать кого-либо
obvious to (adj)	быть очевидным

occur to (v)	приходить на ум
offence against (n)	совершать правонарушение
operate on sb for appendicitis (v)	оперировать кого-либо
opinion of/on (n)	точка зрения насчет чего-либо, мнение о
opposite of/to (adj)	противоположный чему-либо
in the original	в оригинале
part with (v)	расстаться, разойтись
pass away	уйти в мир иной, скончаться
pass for	сойти за кого-либо, быть принятым за кого-либо
pass off	проходить, утихнуть, постепенно исчезать; пройти удачно; сбывать, подсовывать
pass off as	выдавать себя за кого-либо
pass on	проходить дальше, передавать дальше, переходить к другому вопросу
pass out	терять сознание
patient with (adj)	быть терпеливым
pay by cheque (v)	платить
pay for (v) (but: pay a bill)	платить за что-либо
pay in cash (v)	заплатить наличными
pay back	возвращать деньги; отплатить, отомстить
pay down	уплатить частично
pay for the crime	понести наказание за преступление
pay off	рассчитать кого-либо (перед увольнением); расплатиться сполна, рассчитаться
pay out	выплачивать
pay up	платить, расплачиваться
peculiar to (adj)	свойственный, специфический, характерный
persist in (v) (insist on)	настаивать на
(take a) photograph of (n)	фотографировать
pick at	придираться
pick off	срывать, обрывать, снимать
pick on	цепляться, придираться, дразнить, приставать
pick out	выбирать
pick up	поднимать, подбирать; заезжать, заходить; научиться, быстро нахвататься; идти на лад/ на поправку, наладиться; подбирать; арестовать; покупать, приобретать
picture of (n)	фотография
prepare for	готовиться к
pull in/up	останавливать(ся)
pull in/into	прибывать
pull over	подъехать к тротуару или к краю дороги
put in	проводить, устанавливать, прерывать, вмешиваться
to feel pity for (n)	жалость, сочувствие к кому-либо

to have (take) pity on smb	сжалиться над кем-либо
pleasant to (adj)	быть приятным
pleased with (adj)	быть довольным чему-либо
(take) pleasure in (n)	находить удовольствие в
(have the) pleasure of (n)	получать удовольствие
point at/to (v) (his guilt)	указывать на что-либо (на его вину)
point in (n) (<i>There is no point in doing it.</i>)	смысл в чем-либо
point out	указывать, выделять, подчеркивать
<i>Keep to the point!</i>	<i>Ближе к делу!</i>
<i>That's the point!</i>	<i>Вот в чем дело (суть)!</i>
(to come) to the point	дойти до главного (до сути)
point of	суть чего-либо
point up	подчеркивать, делать особое ударение на что-либо
(im)polite to (adj)	быть вежливым
popular with (the public) (adj)	быть популярным (среди публики)
pop in	заскочить по дороге
praise sb for (v)	хвалить кого-либо за что-либо
pray for sth/sb (v)	молиться за
prefer sth to sth else (v)	предпочитать
(have a) preference for	отдавать предпочтение
prepare for (v)	готовиться к
present sb with (v)	вручать кому-либо что-либо
prevent sb from doing sth (v)	мешать кому-либо в чем-либо
(take) (a) pride in (n), to be proud of sth	гордиться
at a price of \$40	по цене
pride oneself on(in) sth/on doing sth(v)	гордиться чем-либо (<i>I pride myself in gardening.</i>)
prohibit sb from doing sth (v)	запрещать кому-либо что-либо
prone to (adj)	быть склонным к чему-либо
protect against/from (v)	защищать кого-либо от чего-либо
protection from/against (n)	защита от чего-либо
protest about/at (v)	протестовать по поводу
provide sb with sth	обеспечивать чем-либо
provide for sb	обеспечивать кого-либо
pull down	сносить (дом); понижать (в звании, цену); ослаблять
pull in/up	останавливать(ся)
pull in/into	прибывать
pull out	вытаскивать, вырывать; отходить от станции; отъезжать, уезжать
pull over	подъехать к тротуару или к краю дороги
pull oneself together	собраться (с силами)
pull through	справляться с (трудностями)
pull up	останавливаться
punish sb for (v)	наказывать за что-либо

put aside/by	откладывать (деньги), копить
put across	передавать (идею, смысл)
put away	складывать; сажать (в тюрьму)
put down (take down)	записывать; подавлять
put down to	связывать (успех с чем-либо)
put forward	предлагать
put off (to postpone, to delay)	откладывать, переносить
put on (to take off – снимать)	одевать; набирать вес; ставить (спектакль)
put out	тушить, гасить огонь; отключать
be put out	быть раздраженным
put through to sb	соединить по телефону
put up	возводить; давать приют, размещать
put up with	мириться, терпеть что-либо
puzzled about/by (adj)	пребывать в недоумении
qualified for	подходящий, пригодный для
quick at	делать что-либо быстро, умело
quotation (from)	цитата из... (котировка, курс)
quarrel about sth with sb	ссориться с кем-либо из-за чего-либо
rave about	бредить о
react to (v)	реагировать на
reaction to (n)	реакция на
ready for (adj)	быть готовым к чему-либо
reason for (n)	причина, основание, довод
reason from (v)	делать выводы из
reason with sb (v)	уговаривать, урезонивать кого-либо
reason sb into sth	уговорить, убедить кого-либо сделать что-либо
reason sb out of sth	отговорить кого-либо от чего-либо
rebel against (v)	восстать против
receive a letter	получать
receive from (to hear from) (v)	получать от кого-либо
recover from (v)	поправляться, выздоравливать
(keep) a record of (n)	запись чего-либо
reduction in (n) (sugar intake)	сокращение в чем-либо
refer to (v)	отсылать кого-либо к кому-либо; навести справки; сослаться
(in) reference to (n)	ссылаясь на
refrain from	сдерживаться, воздерживаться от
regard as (v)	что касается
regardless of (prep)	не считаясь, не взирая на
related to (adj) (Stonehenge is related to the movements of the sun and moon)	относить что-либо к чему-либо, иметь отношение к чему-либо, связь с
relationship between (n) (But: a good relationship with sb)	взаимоотношения между кем-либо
relevant to (adj)	относящийся к чему-либо; важный
rely on (v)	полагаться на кого-либо

remedy for flu	средство от гриппа
remind sb of/about (v)	напоминать кому-либо о чем-либо
remove from (v)	устранять
replace sth with sth else (v)	заменять
reply to (n/v)	отвечать на
report on (n/v)	представлять доклад о
reputation for (of) (n)	иметь репутацию
research on/into (n)	исследование в чем-либо
respect for (n)	уважение за что-либо
respected for (adj)	уважаемый за что-либо
respond to (v)	реагировать на что-либо
responsible for (adj)	быть ответственным за что-либо
responsibility for (n)	ответственность за что-либо
result from (v) (= be the consequence of)	вследствие чего-либо
result in (v) (=to cause sth)	заканчиваться чем-либо, вызвать что-либо
result of (n)	в результате
resulting from (adj)	следующий
rich in (adj)	быть богатым чем-либо
(get) rid of sth	избавляться от
ring off	давать отбой, вешать трубку
ring up	звонить, вызывать по телефону
rip off	обобрать как липку, ограбить
rise in (n)	подъем в
do sth at one's own risk	делать что-либо на свой страх и риск
(make) room for (n)	давать место
rub in (<i>Don't rub it in!</i>)	втирать (<i>Не сыпь мне соль на раны!</i>)
rub off	стирать(ся), счищать
rub out	стирать, вычищать
rude to (adj)	грубить кому-либо
rule out	исключать
run about	суетиться, бегать туда-сюда
run across (run into) sb	случайно встретить кого-либо, столкнуться
run after	преследовать; ухаживать
run away	убегать
run down	переехать кого-либо, сбить, наскочить
run over	переехать кого-либо, задавить
run in	объезжать (новый автомобиль)
run off	убегать, удирать
run out of	заканчиваться; исчерпать запасы
run through	использовать; репетировать, повторять
run up	собирать, аккумулировать
run up against	встречаться с трудностями
rustle up	сварганить, сообразить поесть, раздобыть
safe from (adj)	быть защищенным от
same as (adj)	то же самое
satisfied with (adj)	быть удовлетворенным чем-либо

save sb from (v)	спасти кого-либо от чего-либо
scared of (adj)	испугаться чего-либо
search for	искать
(be) in search of	быть в поисках
see about (to)	позаботиться о чем-либо, заняться чем-либо
see off	проводить
see out	проводить до выхода
see over (look around)	осматривать
see through	видеть кого-либо насквозь
see to	заботиться, присматривать
send away	прогонять, увольнять
send for	посылать за кем-либо
send in	подавать (заявление)
send off	отсылать, отправлять
send on	пересылать
send out	отправлять, рассылать
sensible of sth (adj)	осознавать что-либо
<i>That was very sensible of you!</i>	<i>Вы очень умно поступили!</i>
sensitive to (adj)	быть чувствительным к
sentence sb to (v)	приговаривать кого-либо к чему-либо
separate from (v)	отделить от
serious about (adj)	относиться серьезно
set out (off) to	отправляться в
set about	начинать делать что-либо
set aside	откладывать
set back	переводить часы; нарушать планы
set in	наступить, установиться
set on	натравливать
set sb up	«подставить» кого-либо
set to	начать усердно работать
set up	начинать (бизнес); устанавливать (рекорд); воздвигать (памятник)
set up a site	устанавливать сайт
set sail	отправляться по морю
settle down	поселяться, водворяться, устраиваться, усаживаться
settle in (into)	переехать, вселиться в новую квартиру, устроиться на новом месте
settle up	расплачиваться, рассчитываться
share in/of sth (n)	доля, часть
<i>I'm ready to share with you in the costs.</i>	<i>Я готов разделить с вами расходы.</i>
shelter from (v)	приютиться, спрятаться от
shiver from cold	дрожать от холода
shocked at/by (adj)	быть чем-либо шокированным
shoot at (v)	стрелять в кого-либо
to be short of (adj)	мало чего-либо

shortage of food	нехватка продовольствия
shout at (v)	кричать на кого-либо
shout for (to)	окликать, подзывать
show (a)round	сопровождать, показывать город, знакомить с городом
show in	проводить, сопровождать
show off	похваляться, хвастаться, красоваться, рисоваться
show out	проводить до двери
show up	появляться, приходить
shut up	замолчать, заставить замолчать
shy of (adj)	быть застенчивым из-за чего-либо
sick of (adj)	устать от чего-либо
<i>I'm sick and tired of doing nothing.</i>	<i>Мне надоело ничего не делать.</i>
silly to do sth (adj) (But: <i>It was silly of him.</i>)	глупо что-либо делать
similar to (adj)	быть схожим с
skilful/skilled at (adj)	искусный в чем-либо
slow in/about doing sth/to sth (adj)	быть медлительным
slow down	снижать скорость
smell of (n/v)	запах чего-либо
smile at (v)	улыбаться кому-либо
solution to (n)	принять решение по поводу чего-либо
sorry about (adj) (= feel sorry for sb (for doing sth))	сожалеть о чем-либо
sort out	привести в порядок, уладить проблему/отношения, утрясти
speak to/with sb about (v)	говорить с кем-либо о чем-либо
speak up/out	говорить внятно и отчетливо, говорить ясно и громко
specialise in (v)	специализироваться в чем-либо
specialist in (n)	быть специалистом в чем-либо
speed up	увеличивать (скорость)
spend money on sth (v)	тратить деньги на что-либо
spend time in (a place)/doing sth (v)	тратить время на что-либо
split into (v)	расколоться на
split up	порвать (отношения), разойтись
spy on (v)	шпионить за кем-либо
<i>This bus stands 80 people.</i>	<i>В автобусе 80 стоячих мест.</i>
stand by	быть наготове; поддерживать кого-либо
stand by agreement	придерживаться соглашения
stand for (phr v)	символизировать, обозначать что-либо
stand for the harbour	держаться курс в гавань
stand in for	заменять кого-либо
stand out	выделяться, быть заметным; блистать
stand up	вставать; разминуться (с кем-либо)
stand up for	поддерживать

stand up to	сопротивляться, противостоять
to stand for the harbour	держат курс в гавань
to stand by agreement	придерживаться соглашения
stare at (v)	пристально смотреть
a strain on the nerves(n)	напряжение (нагрузка) для нервов
be on the strain	быть в напряжении
stay away	отсутствовать, не приходить, держаться в стороне
stay behind	оставаться после окончания чего-либо
stay in	не выходить, оставаться дома
stay on	оставаться, задерживаться
stay out	отсутствовать, не возвращаться домой
stay up (to sit up late for sb)	засиживаться допоздна, ждать кого-либо
stop off	остановиться в пути, сделать остановку
strike up	начинать, завязывать
subject to your consent	при условии вашего согласия
to submit to terms	подчиняться условиям
to submit to examination	подвергаться экзамену
to submit to consideration (But: submit for publication)	отдать на чье-либо рассмотрение
subscribe to (v)	подписываться на газету
subscribe for	подписываться на журналы, книги
<i>I subscribe myself your humble servant.</i>	<i>Остаюсь вашим покорным слугой.</i>
substitute for sb	заменять кого-либо
succeed in (v)	преуспевать в чем-либо
suffer from (v)	страдать от
(in)sufficient for sth/sb (adj)	(не)достаточный для
superior to (adj)	превосходящий кого-либо
sure of/about (adj)	быть уверенным в чем-либо
for sure	точно, наверняка
surprised at/by (adj)	быть удивленным в чем-либо
surrender to (v)	сдаваться
surrounded by (adj)	окруженный чем-либо
suspect sb of (v)	подозревать кого-либо в чем-либо
suspicious of (adj)	относиться с подозрением к кому-либо
(un)sympathetic to/towards sth (adj)	сочувствовать, сочувственно относиться к чему-либо
<i>Accept my deep sympathy.</i>	<i>Примите мое глубокое соболезнование.</i>
sympathize with (v)	сочувствовать кому-либо, жалеть кого-либо
take about/(a)round	сопровождать, показывать достопримечательности
take after sb(in character)	быть похожим (по характеру)
take away	убирать, уносить
take back	отвозить, отводить, относить
take down (put down)	снимать, записывать, стенографировать
take for	ошибочно принять за
take in	провести, одурачить, околпачить
take off	раздеваться, снимать; взлетать (о самолете)

take on	нанимать
take out	пригласить, повести (в кино и т.д.)
take over	принимать дела, вступить в должность; взять на себя ответственность
take to smb	привыкнуть, пристраститься, привязаться, полюбить
take up	заняться чем-либо, браться; отнимать время
be taken aback	быть сильно удивленным, ошеломленным, захваченным врасплох
be taken in by sb	быть обманутым кем-либо
take care of sb/sth (n)	заботиться о ком-либо
take pity on sb	сжалиться над кем-либо
take your time	не торопитесь
take sth to sb/sth (v) = to take a dislike to sb	невзлюбить кого-либо
take sb to task	сделать выговор, нагоняй
<i>It takes me 10 minutes to get to the university.</i>	
talent for sth (n)	быть талантливым в чем-либо
talk into	уговорить, склонить
talk out of	отговорить, разубедить
talk over	обсуждать, дискутировать
talk to sb about sth (v)	разговаривать с кем-либо о чем-либо
taste of (v)	вкус чего-либо
(have good/bad) taste in	иметь вкус в
tell apart	различать
tell off	отчитать, обругать, пропесочить
to be on friendly (good) terms with sb	быть в дружеских (хороших) отношениях с
terrible at (adj)	быть ужасным
terrified of (adj)	быть в ужасе от
thank sb for (v)	благодарить за что-либо
thankful for (adj)	быть благодарным за что-либо
think about (v) – consider, concentrate the mind on sth	думать о чем-либо
think of – have an opinion; have an idea	думать
think over	обдумывать, продумывать, взвешивать
threat to sb/sth/ threat of sth (n)	угрожать кому-либо
threaten sb with sth (v)	грозить кому-либо
throw sth at (v) (in order to hit)	бросать в кого-либо
throw sth to (v) (in order to catch)	бросать кому-либо
on time (on shedule)	вовремя (8.00), по расписанию
in time	вовремя (заблаговременно) (7.55)
tired from (adj)	уставать
tired of (adj) (= fed up with)	уставать из-за чего-либо
translate from the French into Russian(v) (<i>What's the English for ___Russian "мур"?</i>)	переводить с какого-либо на какой-либо

tread on (v)	ступать на
treat smb to sth	угощать кого-либо чем-либо
trip over (n)	поездка
trip up	уличить во лжи; сделать подножку
trouble with (n)	иметь трудности с
try on (in the fitting-room)	примерять
tuck in/into	уплетать за обе щеки
turn away	отказывать(ся)
turn down	отклонять, отвергать, отказывать; уменьшать (убавлять) громкость, свет, газ
turn in	ложиться спать
turn into	превращать(ся)
turn off (switch off)	выключать, гасить, закрывать
turn on (switch on)	включать, зажигать
turn out	выключать, гасить; увольнять; оказаться (<i>He turned out an excellent manager</i>) Прибывать, собираться (<i>How many people turned out for the meeting?</i>)
turn over	перелистывать (страницы); переключать TV-каналы; переворачиваться
turn to	обращаться к кому-либо; начинать делать что-либо
turn up	неожиданно появляться, находиться; подворачиваться; увеличивать громкость;
typical of (adj)	типичный для
unaware of (adj)	не осознавая что-либо
understanding of (n)	понимание чего-либо
uneasy about (adj)	тревожиться по поводу чего-либо
upset about/over sth (adj)	расстраиваться из-за чего-либо
to be used (accustomed) to doing sth (adj)	привыкнуть к чему-либо
to get used (accustomed) to doing smth (make) use of (n)	привыкнуть к чему-либо употреблять что-либо, пользоваться чем-либо
used up	изнуренный, измученный
make use of sb's name	ссылаться на кого-либо
valid for (length of time) (adj)	действительный в течение...
valid in (places) (adj)	действительный
value sth at (v)	быть ценным в чем-либо
visitors to Scotland	приезжающие в Шотландию
vote against/for (v)	голосовать против/за
vouch for	ручаться за что-либо, подтверждать
wait for sth (v) (expect sth)	ждать, ожидать
wait on/upon sb	прислуживать, обслуживать, ухаживать
warm to	почувствовать симпатию, расположение
warm (up)	греть, нагревать, согревать, разогревать

warn sb against/about/of (v)	предупреждать о
wash up	мыть(ся)
waste (time/money) on (v)	попусту тратить
weak in/at	слабый в
wear away	изнашиваться; вытираться
wear down	уменьшать сопротивление, сдаваться
wear off	прекращаться постепенно, останавливаться
wear out	изнашивать(ся); изматывать, изнурять, истощать
wolf down	уминать, уплетать
wonder about (v)	раздумывать о чем-либо
work on	воздействовать на
work out	выработать, составить (план); высчитать, вычислить; разрабатывать, развиваться успешно; решить проблему
work up	нарабатывать
to be worth doing	стоит что-либо делать
worry about (v)	волноваться из-за чего-либо
worthy of (adj)	стоимость чего-либо
write to sb (v)	писать кому-либо
wrong about (adj)	ошибаться насчет чего-либо

Appendix 3

The Main Forms of Irregular Verbs

№	The Infinitive	The Past Indefinite	Participle II	Translation
1	abide abide abide	abode abode abided	abode abidden abided	твердо держаться чего-либо; терпеть; пребывать; ждать. (abide by)
2	arise	arose	arisen	возникать, появляться; проис- текать, являться результатом
3	awake awake	awoke awoke	awoken awaked	(про)будить; осознать
4	be	was, were	been	быть, находиться
5	bear	bore	borne	носить
6	bear bear	bore bore	born borne	рождать, производить; носить
7	beat	beat	beaten	бить
8	become	became	become	становиться, стать
9	befall	befell	befallen	постигать (о судьбе); случаться, приключаться
10	beget beget	begot begat (Bible)	begotten begotten	рождать; порождать

11	begin	began	begun	начинать
12	behold	beheld	beheld	замечать, увидеть
13	bend	bent	bent	сгибать; покорять(ся)
14	bereave bereave	bereft bereaved	bereft bereaved	лишать, отнимать
15	beseech	besought	besought	умолять
16	beset	beset	beset	окружать, осаждать
17	bet bet	bet betted	bet betted	держаться пари
18	betake	betook	betaken	прибегать к чему-либо (to)
19	bethink	bethought	bethought	вспомнить, подумать о чем-либо (of)
20	bid bid bid	bid bid bade	bid bidden bidden	приказывать; предлагать
21	bind	bound	bound	связывать, обязывать
22	bite bite	bit bit	bit bitten	кусать; клевать (fish); жечь (pepper); щипать (frost)
23	bleed	bled	bled	кровоточить, истекать кровью; пускать кровь; вымогать деньги (bleed sb for \$100)
24	blend blend	blent blended	blent blended	смешивать
25	bless bless	blest blessed	blest blessed	благословлять
26	blow	blew	blown	дуть
27	break	broke	broken	ломать, разбивать
28	breed	bred	bred	разводить (животных), высиживать (птенцов); размножаться
29	bring	brought	brought	приносить, привозить
30	broadcast broadcast	broadcast broadcasted	broadcast broadcasted	распространять, вещать
31	build	built	built	строить
32	burn burn	burnt burned	burnt burned	гореть; поджаривать; жечь
33	burst	burst	burst	взрываться; прорываться; лопаться
34	bust bust	bust busted	bust busted	обанкротиться
35	buy	bought	bought	покупать
36	cast	cast	cast	бросать
37	catch	caught	caught	ловить
38	chide chide chide	chid chid chided	chidden chid chided	бранить; упрекать
39	choose	chose	chosen	выбирать

40	cleave cleave cleave	cleft clove cleaved	cleft cloven cleaved	раскалывать; рассекать (волны, воздух)
41	cling	clung	clung	прильнуть к (to); цепляться, держаться вместе
42	clothe clothe	clad clothed	clad clothed	одевать; облекать
43	come	came	come	приходить; приезжать
44	cost	cost	cost	стоить
45	creep	crept	crept	ползать; красться
46	crow crow	crew crowed	crowed crowed	петь (петух); ликовать
47	cut	cut	cut	резать; стричь; косить
48	dare dare	durst dared	dared dared	сметь, отваживаться
49	deal	dealt	dealt	раздавать, распределять; иметь дело с кем-либо
50	dig	dug	dug	рыть, копать
51	dive dive	(US) dove dived	dived dived	нырять
52	do	did	done	делать
53	draw	drew	drawn	рисовать; тянуть
54	dream dream	dreamt dreamed	dreamt dreamed	мечтать; видеть во сне
55	drink	drank	drunk	пить
56	drive	drove	driven	гнать (скот); вбивать (гвоздь); управлять машиной, лошады- ми
57	dwell	dwelt	dwelt	жить, пребывать; удержи- ваться на чем-либо
58	eat	ate	eaten	есть
59	fall	fell	fallen	падать
60	feed	fed	fed	кормить
61	feel	felt	felt	чувствовать
62	fight	fought	fought	сражаться, бороться
63	find	found	found	находить
64	flee	fled	fled	бежать; избегать
65	fling	flung	flung	кидать
66	fly	flew	flown	летать
67	forbear	forbore	forborne	быть терпеливым; воздержи- ваться
68	forbid	forbad(e)	forbidden	запрещать
69	forecast forecast	forecast forecasted	forecast forecasted	предсказывать
70	forego	forewent	foregone	предшествовать; воздержаться от чего-либо
71	foreknow	foreknew	foreknown	знать заранее

72	foresee	foresaw	foreseen	предвидеть
73	foretell	foretold	foretold	предсказывать
74	forget	forgot	forgotten	забывать
75	forgive	forgave	forgiven	прощать
76	forsake	forsook	forsaken	оставлять; отказываться от привычки
77	forswear	forsook	forsworn	отрекаться; отказаться; нарушать клятву; лжесвидетельствовать
78	freeze	froze	frozen	замораживать
79	gainsay	gainsaid	gainsaid	противоречить; отрицать
80	get	got	got (US-gotten)	получать
81	gild gild	gilt gilded	gilded gilded	(по)золотить
82	gird gird	girt girded	girt girded	опоясывать, подпоясывать
83	give	gave	given	давать, дарить
84	go	went	gone	идти; ехать
85	grave grave	graved graved	graven graved	гравировать; запечатлевать
86	grind	ground	ground	молоть, перемалывать
87	grow	grew	grown	расти, выращивать
88	hamstring hamstring	hamstrung hamstringed	hamstrung hamstringed	подрезать крылья; ослаблять
89	hang hang	hung hanged	hung hanged	вешать, повесить (картину); вешать (казнить)
90	have	had	had	иметь
91	hear	heard	heard	слышать
92	heave heave	hove heaved	hove heaved	поднимать (якорь); произносить, издавать (звук)
93	hew hew	hewed hewed	hewn hewed	рубить
94	hide	hid	hidden	прятаться
95	hit	hit	hit	ударять, поражать, попадать
96	hold	held	held	держать
97	hurt	hurt	hurt	причинять боль; болеть; повредить;
98	inlay	inlaid	inlaid	выстилать; покрывать инкрустацией
99	keep	kept	kept	держать; хранить
100	kneel	knelt	knelt	стоять на коленях; становиться на колени
101	knit knitted	knit knitted	knit knitted	вязать; штопать
102	know	knew	known	знать

103	lade	laded	laden	грузить; вычерпывать (воду из лодки)
104	lay	laid	laid	класть; возлагать
105	lead	led	led	вести, руководить
106	lean lean	leant leaned	leant leaned	наклоняться (forward – вперед; over – над); опираться (on); иметь склонность
107	leap leap	leapt leaped	leapt leaped	прыгать, скакать
108	learn learn	learnt learned	learnt learned	учить(ся); выучить; узнать
109	leave	left	left	покидать; оставлять; уезжать
110	lend	lent	lent	давать займы; придавать, предоставлять
111	let	let	let	разрешать, позволять
112	lie	lay	lain	лежать
113	light light	lit lighted	lit lighted	зажигать; освещать
114	lose	lost	lost	терять, лишаться (to lose consciousness)
115	make	made	made	делать
116	mean	meant	meant	значить, означать; иметь в виду
117	meet	met	met	встречать(ся)
118	miscast	miscast	miscast	неправильно распределять (роли)
119	misdeal	misdealt	misdealt	ошибаться (при сдаче карт)
120	misgive	misgave	misgiven	внушать недоверие/опасения
121	mishear	misheard	misheard	ослышаться
122	mislay	mislaid	mislaid	положить (не на место); затерять
123	mislead	misled	misled	вводить в заблуждение
124	misread	misread	misread	неправильно истолковывать
125	misspell misspell	misspelt misspelled	misspelt misspelled	орфографически неграмотно писать; делать орфографическую ошибку
126	misspend	misspent	misspent	неразумно, зря тратить
127	mistake	mistook	mistaken	ошибаться; принять за (for)
128	misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstood	неправильно понимать
129	mow mow	mowed mowed	mown mowed	косить
130	outbid	outbid	outbid	перебивать цену; превзойти; перещеголять
131	outdo	outdid	outdone	превзойти
132	outgo	outwent	outgone	превосходить, опережать
133	outgrow	outgrew	outgrown	перерастать

134	outride	outrode	outridden	стойко выдержать; опередить
135	outrun	outran	outrun	перегонять, опережать
136	outshine	outshone	outshone	затмевать
137	overbear	overbore	overborne	подавлять
138	overcast	overcast	overcast	покрывать; затемнять; омрачать; затмевать
139	overcome	overcame	overcome	преодолевать, побеждать
140	overdo	overdid	overdone	перестараться; переутомиться; пережарить
141	overdraw	overdrew	overdrawn	преувеличивать; превысить свой кредит в банке
142	overeat	overate	overeaten	переесть, объедаться
143	overhang	overhung	overhung	нависать, выступать над чем- либо; угрожать
144	overhear	overheard	overheard	подслушивать; нечаянно услышать
145	overlay	overlaid	overlaid	покрывать
146	overleap overleap	overleapt overleaped	overleapt overleaped	перепрыгивать; переоценить
147	overlie	overlay	overlain	лежать на чем-либо
148	overpay	overpaid	overpaid	переплачивать
149	override	overrode	overridden	отвергать; брать верх, перевешивать
150	overrun	overran	overrun	переливаться через край, на- воднить; опустошать, кишеть; зарастать (сорняками)
151	oversee	oversaw	overseen	надзирать за; подсматривать; случайно увидеть
152	oversell	oversold	oversold	запродать больше (акций, то- вара), чем имеется в налич- ности
153	overset	overset	overset	нарушать порядок; повергать в смущение (в расстройство)
154	overshoot	overshot	overshot	промахнуться; проехать свою остановку
155	oversleep	overslept	overslept	проспать
156	overspend	overspent	overspent	тратить чрезмерно много; сорить деньгами
157	overtake	overtook	overtaken	застигнуть врасплох
158	overthrow	overthrew	overthrown	свергать
159	partake	partook	partaken	принимать участие; отведать что-либо; смахивать на (of)
160	pay	paid	paid	платить
161	prove prove	proved proved	proven proved	доказывать
162	put	put	put	класть, положить

163	quit quit	quit quitted	quit quitted	покидать, оставлять; бросать
164	read	read	read	читать
165	rebind	rebound	rebound	переплести (книгу) вновь
166	rebuild	rebuilt	rebuilt	строить заново; восстановить
167	recast	recast	recast	придавать новую форму; отлить заново
168	redo	redid	redone	переделывать
169	rehear	reheard	reheard	слушать вторично судебное дело; вновь слышать
170	relay	relaid	relaid	снова класть
171	remake	remade	remade	переделывать
172	rend	rent	rent	разрывать; отрывать от
173	repay	repaid	repaid	отплатить; возвращать
174	reread	reread	reread	перечитывать
175	rerun	reran	rerun	повторно показывать (фильм)
176	reset	reset	reset	вставлять, вправлять; вновь наточить
177	resell	resold	resold	перепродавать
178	retell	retold	retold	пересказывать
179	rewrite	rewrote	rewritten	переписать
180	rid rid	rid ridded	rid ridded	избавлять; избавляться от
181	ride	rode	ridden	ехать верхом
182	ring	rang	rung	звонить; звучать
183	rise	rose	risen	всходить; подниматься
184	rive rive	rived rived	riven rived	раскалывать, расщеплять
185	run	ran	run	бегать
186	saw saw	sawed sawed	sawn sawed	пилить
187	say	said	said	сказать
188	see	saw	seen	видеть
189	seek	sought	sought	искать
190	sell	sold	sold	продавать
191	send	sent	sent	посылать
192	set	set	set	помещать
193	sew sew	sewed sewed	sewn sewed	шить
194	shake	shook	shaken	трясти; дрожать
195	shave shave	shaved shaved	shaven shaved	бриться
196	shear shear	sheared sheared	shorn sheared	стричь; обдирать

197	shed	shed	shed	терять (волосы, зубы); проливать (слезы, кровь); сбрасывать
198	shine	shone	shone	светить; блистать; превосходить
199	shoe	shod	shod	обувать; подковывать
200	shoot	shot	shot	стрелять
201	show show	showed showed	shown showed	показывать
202	shrink shrink	shrank shrunken	shrunk shrunken	садиться (о материи); избегать; отпрянуть.
203	shrive shrive	shrove shrived	shriven shrived	исповедывать; отпускать грехи
204	shut	shut	shut	закрывать
205	sing	sang	sung	петь
206	sink sink	sank sank	sunk sunken	опускаться; погружаться
207	sit	sat	sat	сидеть
208	slay	slew	slain	убивать
209	sleep	slept	slept	спать
210	slide	slid	slid	скользить
211	sling	slung	slung	швырять; оскорблять; вешать
212	slink	slunk	slunk	красться, идти крадучись
213	slit	slit	slit	разрезать в длину; рваться
214	smell smell	smelt smelled	smelt smelled	пахнуть; чуют
215	smite	smote	smitten	поражать
216	sow sow	sowed sowed	sown sowed	сеять
217	speak	spoke	spoken	разговаривать
218	speed speed	ped speeded	ped speeded	спешить, ускорять
219	spell spell	spelt spelled	spelt spelled	писать, читать по буквам
220	spend	spent	spent	тратить деньги; проводить время
221	spill spill	spilt spilled	spilt spilled	проливать; вываливать
222	spin spin	span spun	spun spun	прясть (пряжу); плести (небылицы)
223	spit	spat	spat	плевать
224	split	split	split	раскалывать, расщеплять
225	spoil spoil	spoilt spoiled	spoilt spoiled	портить; баловать

226	spread	spread	spread	расстилать; распространять
227	spring	sprang	sprung	прыгать; бросаться
228	stand	stood	stood	стоять
229	stave stave	stove staved	stove staved	проламывать; отсрочить
230	steal	stole	stolen	воровать; тайком добиться; красться
231	stick	stuck	stuck	приклеивать; прилипать; застревать
232	sting	stung	stung	жалить; жечь
233	stink stink	stank stunk	stunk stunk	вонять
234	strew strew	strewed strewed	strewn strewed	посыпать; разбрасывать
235	stride	strode	stridden	шагать; перешагнуть
236	strike strike	struck struck	struck stricken	ударять
237	string	strung	strung	натягивать (струны); напрягаться
238	strive	strove	striven	бороться; стремиться
239	swear	swore	sworn	клясться, ругаться
240	sweep	swept	swept	подметать
241	swell swell	swelled swelled	swollen swelled	пухнуть, набухать
242	swim	swam	swum	плавать
243	swing	swung	swung	качать
244	take	took	taken	брать, взять
245	teach	taught	taught	учить кого-либо; препода- вать
246	tear	tore	torn	рвать, разрывать
247	tell	told	told	рассказывать
248	think	thought	thought	думать
249	thrive thrive	throve thrived	thriven thrived	процветать; преуспевать
250	throw	threw	thrown	бросать
251	thrust	thrust	thrust	толкать
252	tread tread	trod trod	trodden trod	ступать; топтать
253	unbend	unbent	unbent	выпрямляться; становиться непринужденным
254	unbind	unbound	unbound	развязывать; освобождать
255	underbid	underbid	underbid	предлагать более низкую цену
256	underdo	underdid	underdone	недоделывать; недожарить
257	underfeed	underfed	underfed	недокармливать; недоедать

258	undergo	underwent	undergone	испытывать; подвергаться
259	underlay	underlaid	underlaid	подкладывать; подпирать
260	underlet	underlet	underlet	пересдавать в аренду
261	underlie	underlay	underlain	лежать (под чем-либо); лежать (в основании чего-либо)
262	underpay	underpaid	underpaid	оплачивать слишком низко
263	undersell	undersold	undersold	продавать по сниженной цене
264	underset	underset	underset	подпирать
265	undershoot	undershot	undershot	промахнуться, взять ниже цели; не доехать до остановки
266	underspend	underspent	underspent	недостаточно потратить (денег, времени)
267	understand	understood	understood	понимать
268	undertake	undertook	undertaken	брать на себя
269	underwrite	underwrote	underwritten	подписывать(ся); подтверждать письменно
270	undo	undid	undone	развязывать; расстегивать
271	undraw	undrew	undrawn	открывать, раздвигать (шторы, занавески)
272	unfreeze	unfroze	unfrozen	разморозить; разблокировать
273	unhang	unhung	unhung	снимать (что-либо висящее)
274	unlay	unlaid	unlaid	распускать на пряди (трос); не придавать значения
275	unlearn unlearn	unlearnt unlearned	unlearnt unlearned	разучиться
276	unmake	unmade	unmade	уничтожать сделанное; аннулировать; понизить в звании, должности
277	unsay	unsaid	unsaid	брать назад сказанное, отречься от своих слов
278	unshoe	unshod	unshod	расковать; снимать обувь с кого-либо
279	unweave	unwove	unwoven	распускать (ткань); расплетать
280	unwind	unwound	unwound	разматывать(ся); расслабляться
281	upbear	upbore	upborne	поддерживать; держаться стойко
282	upbuild	upbuilt	upbuilt	выстроить, построить
283	upheave upheave	uphove upheaved	uphove upheaved	поднимать(ся)
284	uphold	upheld	upheld	поддерживать, защищать, поощрять; подтверждать
285	uprise	uprose	uprisen	восставать; подниматься
286	upset	upset	upset	расстраивать; опрокидывать

287	wake wake	woke waked	woken waked	просыпаться; будить
288	waylay	waylaid	waylaid	подстерегать
289	wear	wore	worn	носить
290	weave	wove	woven	ткать; плести (венки); сочинять (сюжет)
291	wed wed	wed wedded	wed wedded	выдавать замуж; женить; вступать в брак; сочетать, соединять
292	weep	wept	wept	плакать
293	wet wet	wet wetted	wet wetted	мочить, смачивать
294	win	won	won	побеждать
295	wind	wound	wound	наматывать; заводить часы
296	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn	брать назад; изъять
297	withhold	withheld	withheld	удерживать(ся); отказывать; утаивать
298	withstand	withstood	withstood	противостоять; сопротивляться
299	wring	wrung	wrung	выжимать; скручивать
300	write	wrote	written	писать

Appendix 4

Expressions with “DO”

1. To perform smth physically, to talk about work and jobs:

(to do a flat, to do the shopping, to do the cooking).

2. “To do” something, nothing, anything, everything, what.

3. “Do + ing” (to talk about activities that take a certain time or are repeated (jobs, hobbies)

There is usually a determiner before the **-ing** form (**the, my, some, much**).

During the holidays I’m going to do some walking, some swimming and a lot of reading.

“DO” + a + NOUN		
1	to do a job	выполнять работу
2	to do a favour (a kindness)	делать одолжение
3	to do an exercise	выполнять упражнение
4	to do a sum	решать арифметическую задачу
5	to do a room	убирать комнату
6	to do a crossword puzzle	разгадывать кроссворд
7	to do a service	оказывать услугу
8	to do an experiment	проводить опыт
9	to do a bed (before going to sleep)	постелить постель
10	to do somebody a good (bad) turn	оказать кому-либо хорошую (плохую) услугу

11	to do a good deed	сделать доброе дело
12	to do a battle	сражаться
13	to do a bust	ворваться
14	to do a dry	забыть текст
15	to do a scoot	удирать со всех ног
16	to do a slime	схитрить
17	to do a course of study	проходить курс обучения
18	to do a guy	прогуливать
19	to do somebody an injustice	несправедливо относиться к кому-либо, обижать кого-либо
20	to do an exam	сдавать экзамен
21	to do a lesson	готовить урок
22	to do an assignment	выполнить задание
23	to do a test	писать контрольную работу
24	to do a report	готовиться к докладу
25	to do a clean	убирать что-либо
26	to do a flat	убирать квартиру
27	to do a house	убирать дом
28	to do a sport (to do sports)	заниматься спортом
29	to do a dance	танцевать
30	to do an operation	сделать операцию
31	to do a puzzle	решать головоломку
32	to do an injury	нанести телесные повреждения

“DO” + the + NOUN

33	to do the dishes	мыть посуду
34	to do the room	отделывать комнату
35	to do the sight of a city	осматривать достопримечательности
36	to do the floor	мыть пол
37	to do the table	убирать со стола
38	to do the windows	мыть окна
39	to do the distance	пройти расстояние
40	to do the trick	добиться, достигнуть цели
41	to do the splits	делать шпагат
42	to do the death	убить
43	to do the needful	сделать то, что необходимо; забить гол
44	to do the accounts	делать подсчет
45	to do the wash up	мыть посуду
46	to do the laundry	стирать
47	to do the work about the house	делать работу по дому
48	to do the honour of doing smth	оказать кому-либо честь

“DO” + one’s + NOUN

49	to do one’s head	сделать с легкостью
50	to do one’s stretch	отбывать свой срок
51	to do one’s postgraduate studies	учиться в аспирантуре
52	to do one’s bit	внести свою лепту

53	to do one's daily stint	выполнить дневную норму
54	to do one's face	сделать макияж
55	to do one's military service	проходить воинскую службу
56	to do one's correspondence	вести переписку
57	to do one's teeth	чистить зубы
58	to do one's duty	выполнять долг, обязанность
59	to do one's hair	делать причёску
60	to do one's utmost	сделать все возможное
<u>“DO” + NOUN (no article)</u>		
61	to do research	проводить исследование
62	to do damage to	нанести ущерб
63	to do business (with)	заниматься коммерцией, иметь дело
64	to do harm	навредить, приносить вред
65	to do subjects	изучать какую-либо дисциплину
66	to do nothing	ничего не делать
67	to do wonders/miracles	делать чудеса
68	to do English	заниматься английским
69	to do honour	оказывать честь
70	to do justice	оценить по заслугам; справедливости ради
71	to do credit	делать честь
72	to do repairs	заниматься починкой
73	to do articles for a magazine	писать статьи для журнала
74	to do multiplication	умножать
75	to do locum	временно исполнять обязанности
76	to do time	отбывать тюремное заключение
77	to do tap	отбивать чечетку
78	to do violence to	оскорблять действием
79	to do wood-work	делать работу по дереву
80	to do good	приносить пользу
81	to do homework	делать домашнее задание
82	to do housework	вести хозяйство, заниматься домашними делами
83	to do revision	повторять
84	to do translation	делать перевод, переводить
85	to do science	изучать естественные науки
86	to do evil	причинять зло
<u>“DO” + ADJECTIVE / ADVERB</u>		
87	to do one's worst	сделать самое худшее
88	to do worse	успевать хуже
89	to do better	успевать лучше
90	to do dirty	сделать гадость
91	to do the agreeable	стараться всем угодить
92	to do the grand	строить из себя персону
93	to do one's best	делать все возможное
94	to do the right	сделать что-либо правильно

95	to do the wrong	сделать что-либо неправильно
96	to do well	учиться хорошо
97	to do badly	учиться плохо
98	to do splendidly	преуспевать, процветать
99	to do the dirty on somebody	сыграть плохую шутку с кем-либо
<u>“DO” + the + ACTION NOUN ENDING in “-ing”</u>		
100	to do the ironing	утюжить
101	to do the shopping	делать покупки
102	to do the washing	заниматься стиркой
103	to do the washing up	мыть посуду
104	to do the gardening	заниматься садоводством
105	to do the cooking	готовить
106	to do the hoovering	пылесосить
107	to do the lecturing (painting)	заниматься чтением лекций (живописью)
108	to do the cleaning	убирать
109	to do the scrubbing	делать генеральную уборку
110	to do the sewing	шить
111	to do the mending	штопать
112	to do the book-keeping	вести бухгалтерский учет
<u>OTHER EXAMPLES with “DO”</u>		
113	to do smth. out of smth.	выманивать что-нибудь у кого-нибудь
114	to do without smth	обходиться
115	to do without jokes	надоели шутки
116	to do away with smth	покончить с чем-либо
117	to do down	надувать
118	to do in	убирать
119	to do smth out	убирать, вычищать хорошо
120	to do over	переделывать
121	to do up the parcel	завязывать пакет
122	to do smth up	застегнуться
123	to do up	прихорашиваться
124	to do-it-yourself	самодельный
125	to do-or-die	отчаянный
126	to do smth for a living	зарабатывать на жизнь
127	to do for something	сидеть за что-то
128	to do with	хотеть, нуждаться
129	to do smb up of (smth)	обворовать
130	to do somebody in the eye	дурачить кого-либо
131	to do something brown	поджарить что-либо
132	to do somebody proud	угостить кого-либо на славу
133	to do oneself proud (well)	не отказывать себе ни в чем
134	to do somebody out of a job	подсидеть кого-либо
135	to do for a rival	разделаться с соперником
136	to do for somebody	заботиться о ком-либо
137	to do for oneself	обходиться без прислуги

138	Do tell!	Неужели? (Да ну!)
139	to do or die	победить или умереть
140	to do some hard thinking	как следует поразмыслить
141	to do something by halves	делать кое-как
142	to do something by one's own volition	сделать по доброй воле
143	to do something like a bird	делать охотно
144	to do something under duress	делать по принуждению
145	Well done!	Браво! Молодец!
146	Do as you want.	Поступай, как знаешь.
147	How are we doing for time?	Как у нас со временем?
148	I don't have anything to do with him	Я не имею с ним ничего общего
149	What can I do for you?	Чем могу быть полезен?
150	It'll do you good.	Это вам будет только на пользу.
151	I can do with a snack.	Мне достаточно только перекусить.
152	What does he do for his living?	Как он зарабатывает на жизнь?
153	The car is very fast. It does 160 miles an hour.	Это очень скоростная машина. Она едет со скоростью 160 миль в час.
154	That won't do.	Так дело не пойдет.

Appendix 5

Expressions with "MAKE"

1. "To prepare", "to manufacture" in structures with 2 objects (*Can you make me a cake?*)
To talk about constructing, building, creating.
2. "Make" can be followed by an object with an adjective or noun referring to a change in the object. (*The rain made the grass wet.*)
3. "To perform" smth mentally, accidentally (*to make progress, to make noise*).
4. "Make a good..." (*That wood will make a good hiding place. Terriers make good hunting dogs.*)

<u>"MAKE" + a + NOUN</u>		
1	to make an attempt	предпринять попытку
2	to make a phone call	позвонить по телефону
3	to make a decision about smth	принимать решение
4	to make a reservation	заказать, забронировать
5	to make a profit	извлекать выгоду, получать прибыль
6	to make a mess	производить беспорядок
7	to make a meal	готовить завтрак, обед, ужин
8	to make a dish	готовить какое-либо блюдо
9	to make a wish	загадывать желание
10	to make a fire	разводить огонь
11	to make a contribution	внести вклад
12	to make a test	выполнить контрольную
13	to make an appointment	условиться о встрече, записаться у врача

14	to make a success of smth	добиться успеха в чем-либо
15	to make a discovery	сделать открытие
16	to make a fortune	разбогатеть
17	to make a joke	подшутить
18	to make an offer to smb	сделать предложение
19	to make a dress	шить платье
20	to make a film	снимать фильм
21	to make a note	делать записи
22	to make a speech	произносить речь
23	to make a remark about smth	делать замечание
24	to make a list of smth	составить список
25	to make a good impression on smb	произвести хорошее впечатление
26	to make a sketch	сделать рисунок/набросок
27	to make a rule	установить правило
28	to make (earn) a good living	хорошо зарабатывать
29	to make a bad break	обанкротиться, сделать ошибку
30	to make a bag of something	уничтожить что-либо, захватить
31	to make a balk of good ground	упустить удобный случай
32	to make a bargain	заключить сделку, прийти к соглашению
33	to make a beast of oneself	безобразно вести себя
34	to make a bonfire of	уничтожить, разрушить
35	to make a bow	поклониться
36	to make a break with somebody	порвать с кем-либо
37	to make a bungle of it	запороть, напортить
38	to make a voyage	путешествовать
39	to make a vow	дать клятву
40	to make a vaunt	хвалиться
41	to make a third	стать третьим
42	to make a stranger	поступать бессердечно
43	to make a study of	тщательно изучать, тщательно изучить
44	to make a stand for	выступить в защиту
45	to make a spoon or spoil a horn	пан или пропал
46	to make a trade-off	пойти на компромисс
47	to make a promise to smb	дать обещание
48	to make a touch-down	совершить посадку
49	to make a spurt	рвануться
50	to make a snatch	попытаться схватить
51	to make a snoot	гримасничать
52	to make a speciality	специализироваться
53	to make a spectacle of oneself	обращать на себя внимание
54	to make a shot	пытаться отгадать
55	to make a sight of oneself	делать из себя посмешище
56	to make a sign of the cross	перекреститься
57	to make a short cut	избрать кратчайший путь
58	to make a score off one's own bat	сделать без помощи других, сделать самостоятельно
59	to make a scene	устроить сцену

60	to make a scoop	сорвать куш
61	to make a rule less stringent	смягчить правило
62	to make a rule practicable	взять за правило
63	to make a sacrifice	принести жертву
64	to make a round of the country	совершить поездку по стране
65	to make a round of visits	нанести ряд визитов
66	to make a rest from work	сделать передышку
67	to make a search	искать что-либо
68	to make a regular thing of smth	регулярно заниматься чем-либо
69	to make a religion	сделать культ
70	to make a religion of something	считать своей священной обязанностью
71	to make a request	сделать заявку, обратиться с просьбой
72	to make a raise	раздобыть, получить взаймы
73	to make a reach	потянуться
74	to make a Judy of oneself	свалять дурака
75	to make a jump	прыгнуть
76	to make a junction	соединиться, объединиться
77	to make a knot	завязать узел
78	to make a lane	дать дорогу
79	to make a laughing/stock of somebody	выставить кого-либо на посмешище
80	to make a light meal	перекусить
81	to make a lodgement	обосноваться, закрепиться
82	to make a long face	помрачнеть
83	to make a long neck	вытянуть шею
84	to make a trip/a journey	совершить поездку
85	to make a long nose	показать нос
86	to make a long story short	короче говоря
87	to make a martyr of oneself	строить из себя мученика
88	to make a match	выйти замуж, жениться
89	to make an ass of somebody	поставить кого-либо в глупое положение; поставить в глупое положение, подшутить над кем-либо
90	to make an ass of oneself	ставить себя в глупое положение
91	to make an ass	подшутить, поставить в глупое положение
92	to make an appearance	показываться, появляться
93	to make an appeal to	привлекать, действовать притягательно на
94	to make an apology	принести извинение, извиниться
95	to make an ambush	устраивать засаду
96	to make a tour of the country	совершить поездку (турне) по стране
97	to make an affidavit	дать показания под присягой
98	to make a mystery of	делать секрет из чего-либо
99	to make a mush	спутать, путать
100	to make a merit	приписывать себе заслугу
101	to make a mess of things	провалить все дело
102	to make a mountain out of a molehill	делать из мухи слона
103	to make a move	сделать ход, встать из-за стола

104	to make a bed (to arrange bed clothes)	убирать постель
105	to make a complaint	подавать жалобу
106	to make an effort	сделать попытку
107	to make an excuse	извиниться
108	to make a mistake (an error)	делать ошибку
109	to make a phone call	позвонить
110	to make a suggestion	вносить предложение
111	to make a mull	перепутать
112	to make a muddle	спутать, перепутать
113	to make an attack	предпринять атаку
114	to make a muck	испортить
115	to make a confession	признаться
116	to make a reconnaissance before opening negotiations	подготавливать почву до начала переговоров
117	to make a matter of conscience	поступать по совести
118	to make a muff of the business	промахнуться
119	to make a change	изменить что-либо
120	to make a choice	сделать выбор
121	to make a comment on smth	прокомментировать что-либо
122	to make a demand	потребовать что-либо
123	to make an exception	быть исключением
124	to make a fool of somebody	валять дурака, ставить себя в глупое положение
125	to make a fuss about smth	суетиться
126	to make a gesture	сделать жест
127	to make a guess	догадаться
128	to make a habit of doing smth	взять себе за правило
129	to make a movement	сделать движение
130	to make a noise/a sound	издавать какие-либо звуки
131	to make an escape	сбежать
132	to make an arrangement with smb (about smth)	условиться с кем-либо о чем-либо
133	to make a purchase	сделать покупку
134	to make an application	подать заявление
135	to make an announcement	сделать объявление
136	to make a statement	сделать заявление
137	to make a recommendation	дать рекомендацию
138	to make a present	сделать подарок
139	to make a cup of tea	приготовить чашку чая
140	to make a plan	наметить план
141	to make a reference to smth	ссылаться на что-либо
<u>“MAKE” + SINGULAR NOUN (no article)</u>		
142	to make money	зарабатывать деньги
143	to make peace with smb	помириться, заключить мир
144	to make love to smth	ухаживать за кем-нибудь

145	to make war on smb	вести войну с кем-либо
146	to make food	готовить еду
147	to make room for smth	освобождать место для чего-либо
148	to make use of	использовать
149	to make tea/coffee	заварить чай/кофе
150	to make noise	шуметь
151	to make fun of someone	высмеивать; подшучивать над кем-то
152	to make progress	достигать успеха
153	to make deal with smth	заключить сделку
154	to make trouble	причинить неприятность
155	to make dinner (supper)	готовить обед (ужин)
156	to make money over to smb	перевести деньги на кого-нибудь
157	to make time	проводить время
158	to make adjustment	приспособиться
159	to make mention of smth	упоминать о чем-либо
160	to make difference	представлять разницу
161	to make water	дать течь
162	to make way for smth	продвигаться вперед, направиться куда-то
163	to make whoopee	шумно веселиться
164	to make tryst	назначать встречу
165	to make shipwreck	погибнуть, разориться
166	to make start	начинать
167	to make salvage	спасать
168	to make acquaintance	познакомиться
169	to make riddance	убрать
170	to make port	войти в порт
171	to make leeway	струсить; отклониться от намеченного пути
172	to make matchwood	разбить вдребезги, разгромить
173	to make mischief	вредить, ссорить
174	to make havoc	производить беспорядок, разрушать
175	to make hay	заготавливать сено
176	to make hay of smth	перевернуть вверх дном; разбить чью-либо аргументацию
177	to make conversation	вести разговор
178	to make haste	спешить
179	to make court to somebody	ухаживать за кем-либо
180	to make choice of something	выбирать, отбирать что-либо
181	to make common cause with somebody	объединяться с кем-либо ради общего дела
182	to make book	принимать ставки
183	to make allowance for	принять во внимание
184	to make translation	переводить
185	to make compensation for something	компенсировать что-либо
186	to make ample provision for one's family	вполне обеспечить семью

<u>“MAKE” + PLURAL NOUN</u>		
187	to make losses	возместить убытки
188	to make changes	вносить перемены
189	to make arrangements	делать подготовку, условиться о цене
190	to make friends	подружиться
191	to make improvements	улучшить
192	to make preparations	делать приготовления
193	to make trips	курсировать
194	to make rubbings	срисовать, делать копии
195	to make provisions	предусматривать, постановлять
196	to make plays	разыгрывать комбинации
197	to make mouths	строить рожи, гримасничать
198	to make enemies	нажить врагов
199	to make concessions	делать уступки
200	to make corrections	исправлять ошибки
201	to make inquiries	наводить справки
202	to make notes	делать заметки (записи)
203	to make complaints	жаловаться на что-либо
204	to make agreements	согласиться
205	to make faces at smb	корчить рожи
206	to make laws	создавать законы
207	to make eyes	делать хорошие глазки
208	to make difficulties	чинить препятствия
209	to make bids for something	претендовать на что-либо
<u>“MAKE” + one’s + NOUN</u>		
210	to make up one’s mind	решаться
211	to make one’s way (for)	продвигаться
<u>“MAKE” + ADJECTIVE</u>		
212	to make sure	убедиться
213	to make ready	приготавливать
214	to make healthier	оздоравливать
215	to make hot	нагревать, разогревать
216	to make light	относиться несерьезно, небрежно
217	to make merry	веселиться
218	to make fast	запирать, закрепить
219	to make free	освобождать
220	to make certain of	убедиться
<u>“MAKE” + VERB</u>		
221	to make think	заставить задуматься
222	to make believe	делать вид, притворяться
<u>OTHER EXAMPLES with “MAKE”</u>		
223	to make smb know	дать знать
224	to make oneself at home	чувствовать себя как дома

225	to make little of	приуменьшить
226	to make the best of	использовать наилучшим образом
227	to make the most of smth	использовать максимально, использовать что-либо наилучшим способом
228	to make smb angry	рассердить кого-нибудь
229	to make smb laugh	рассмешить кого-нибудь
230	to make smth do	обойтись с чем-нибудь
231	to make after	пуститься вслед
232	to make away with	покончить с
233	to make with the drinks	нести напитки
234	to make a living by doing smth	зарабатывать чем-либо на жизнь
235	– What time do you make it? – Ten o'clock. – I make it later.	– Который по-вашему час? – Десять часов. – Я думаю, что уже больше времени.
236	to make off	сбежать
237	to make both ends meet	сводить концы с концами
238	to make out a good case for smth	привести резкие доводы
239	to make up the complement	составить команду
240	Let's make it up.	Давай помиримся. (Давай забудем это.)
241	Let's make it a rule to do it.	Давай возьмем себе это за правило.
242	The story makes good reading.	Этот рассказ интересный.
243	to make no answer	не дать ответ
244	He will make a good musician.	Из него выйдет хороший музыкант.
245	Teachers usually make corrections in red ink.	Обычно учителя делают исправления красными чернилами.
246	to make out a bill/cheque	выписывать счет/чек
247	to make it up to smb	возместить что-то кому-нибудь
248	to make up a road	асфальтировать дорогу
249	to make up the fire	разжигать камин
250	to make up for everything	возместить за все
251	to make up to smth	подлизаться к кому-нибудь
252	to make up for lost time	наверстывать упущенное
253	to make smb happy	веселить кого-нибудь
254	to make back	дуться

Appendix 6

Synonymous and Similar Verbs

bring – brought – brought take – took – taken	приносить, приводить, привозить относить, отводить, отвозить
fall – fell – fallen feel – felt – felt fill – filled – filled	падать чувствовать наполнять
flow – flowed – flowed fly – flew – flown	течь, литься летать

lie – lied – lied lie – lay – lain lay – laid – laid	лгать лежать класть, положить; накрывать на стол
leave – left – left live – lived – lived	уезжать жить
rise – rose – risen raise – raised – raised	подниматься поднимать
strike – struck – struck stroke – stroked – stroked	бить, ударять гладить
match fit become suit go with	подходить (по цвету) подходить (по размеру), быть впору подходить, быть к лицу подходить, быть к лицу (цвет); устраивать, годиться, соответствовать требованиям (<i>The price suits me.</i>) сочетаться (<i>Red doesn't go with blue.</i>)
borrow smth from smb lend – lent – lent	одалживать (брать займы) одалживать (давать займы)
wait for expect	ждать, дожидаться ожидать (рассчитывать, надеяться)
offer propose suggest	предлагать что-либо определенное предлагать руку и сердце (to propose to smb); предлагать что-либо (для рассмотрения) или сделать что-либо (идею) предложить что-либо сделать (идею)
say to smb, say that tell smb smth talk (about) speak to smb (with smb)	сказать рассказывать говорить говорить, разговаривать
study learn	– изучать (предмет) – учиться, заниматься – готовиться к чему-либо – учить (что-либо) – усваивать, учиться чему-либо; узнавать

Справочное издание

Ермашкевич Николай Николаевич
Гейсик Дина Сергеевна

**СПРАВОЧНИК
ПО ГРАММАТИКЕ
АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА
ДЛЯ АБИТУРИЕНТОВ**

На английском и русском языках

В авторской редакции

Художник обложки *Т. Ю. Таран*
Технический редактор *Г. М. Романчук*
Корректор *М. А. Подголина*
Компьютерная верстка *А. В. Заборонок*

Ответственный за выпуск *Т. М. Турчиняк*

Электронный ресурс 2,23 Мб
Режим доступа: www.elib.bsu.by, ограниченный
Дата доступа:

Белорусский государственный университет.
ЛИ № 02330/0494425 от 08.04.2009.
Пр. Независимости, 4, 220030, Минск.